### **CMOS 8-BIT MICROCONTROLLER**



www.onsemi.com

# LC870G00 SERIES USER'S MANUAL

**REV: 1.00** 

ON Semiconductor and the ON logo are registered trademarks of Semiconductor Components Industries, LLC (SCILLC) or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other countries. SCILLC owns the rights to a number of patents, trademarks, copyrights, trade secrets, and other intellectual property. A listing of SCILLC's product/patent coverage may be accessed at www.onsemi.com/site/pdf/Patent-Margpdf. SCILLC reserves the right to make changes without further notice to any products herein. SCILLC makes no warranty, representation or guarantee regarding the suitability of its products for any particular purpose, nor does SCILLC assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any product or circuit, and specifically disclaims any and all liability, including without limitation special, consequential or incidental damages. "Typical" parameters which may be provided in SCILLC data sheets and/or specifications can and do vary in different applications and actual performance may vary over time. All operating parameters, including "Typicals" must be validated for each customer application by customer's technical experts. SCILLC does not convey any license under its patent rights nor the rights of others. SCILLC products are not designed, intended, or authorized for use as components in systems intended for surgical implant into the body, or other applications intended to support or sustain life, or for any other application in which the failure of the SCILLC product could create a situation where personal injury or death may occur. Should be guyer purchase or use SCILLC products for any such unintended or unauthorized application, Buyer shall indemnify and hold SCILLC and its officers, employees, subsidiaries, affiliates, and distributors harmless against all claims, costs, damages, and expenses, and reasonable attorney fees arising out of, directly or indirectly, any claim of personal injury or death associated with such unintended or unauthorized use, even if such claim alleges that SCILLC was negligent reg

Chapte	er 1 C	)verview1-1
1.1	Overv	ew1-1
1.2	Featu	res 1-1
1.3	Pin As	signment 1-6
1.4	Syster	m Block Diagram ······ 1-7
1.5		escription ······· 1-8
1.6	On-ch	ip Debugger Pin Connection Requirements1-10
1.7		nmended Unused Pin Connections ······1-10
1.8		output Types1-10
1.9		Option Table ·······1-11
1.10		Pin Treatment Recommendations (VDD1, VSS1)1-11
Chapte	er 2 lı	nternal Configuration ······ 2-1
2.1	Memo	ry Space 2-1
2.2	Progra	am Counter (PC) 2-1
2.3	Progra	am Memory (ROM) 2-2
2.4	Interna	al Data Memory (RAM) ······ 2-2
2.5		nulator/A Register (ACC/A) 2-3
2.6		ister (B)
2.7	C Reg	ister (C) 2-4
2.8	Progra	am Status Word (PSW) ····· 2-4
2.9	Stack	Pointer (SP)2-5
2.10		et Addressing Registers ······ 2-5
		ssing Modes······· 2-6
		Immediate Addressing (#) ······ 2-6
	2.11.2	Indirect Register Indirect Addressing ([Rn])2-7
	2.11.3	Indirect Register + C Register Indirect Addressing ([Rn,C]) 2-7
	2.11.4	Indirect Register (R0) + Offset Value indirect Addressing ([off]) 2-8
	2.11.5	Direct Addressing (dst)
	2.11.6	ROM Table Look-up Addressing······ 2-9
	2.11.7	External Data Memory Addressing 2-9
2.12	Wait S	Sequence2-10
	2.12.1	Wait Sequence Occurrence2-10
	2.12.2	What is a Wait Sequence?2-10
-		Peripheral System Configuration 3-1
3.1		3-1
	3.1.1	Overview
	3.1.2	Functions 3-1
	3.1.3	Related Registers 3-2

	3.1.4	Options ·····	3-4
	3.1.5	HALT and HOLD Mode Operation	3-4
3.2	Port 1		3-6
	3.2.1	Overview ·····	3-6
	3.2.2	Functions·····	3-6
	3.2.3	Related Registers	3-7
	3.2.4	Options ·····	3-16
	3.2.5	HALT and HOLD Mode Operation	3-16
3.3	Port 7		3-17
	3.3.1	Overview ·····	3-17
	3.3.2	Functions·····	3-17
	3.3.3	Related Registers	3-18
	3.3.4	Options ·····	3-19
	3.3.5	HALT and HOLD Mode Operation	3-19
3.4	Timer/	Counter 0 (T0)	3-21
	3.4.1	Overview ·····	3-21
	3.4.2	Functions	3-21
	3.4.3	Circuit Configuration	3-23
	3.4.4	Related Registers	3-27
3.5	Timer/	Counter 1 (T1)	3-32
	3.5.1	Overview ·····	3-32
	3.5.2	Functions	3-32
	3.5.3	Circuit Configuration	3-34
	3.5.4	Related Registers	3-39
3.6	Base 7	Timer (BT)	3-45
	3.6.1	Overview	3-45
	3.6.2	Functions	3-45
	3.6.3	Circuit Configuration ······	3-46
	3.6.4	Related Registers·····	3-48
3.7	Serial	Interface 1 (SIO1)	3-51
	3.7.1	Overview	3-51
	3.7.2	Functions	3-51
	3.7.3	Circuit Coufiguration ······	3-52
	3.7.4	SIO1 Transmission Examples ·····	3-56
	3.7.5	Related Registers	
3.8	AD Co	onverter (ADC12)·····	3-62
	3.8.1	Overview	
	3.8.2	Functions	3-62
	3.8.3	Circuit Configuration ······	3-64
	3.8.4	Related Registers·····	
	3.8.5	ADC Conversion Example······	
	3.8.6	Hints on the Use of the ADC	

3.9	Refere	ence Voltage Generator Circuit ······	3-71
	3.9.1	Overview ·····	3-71
	3.9.2	Functions	3-71
	3.9.3	Related Registers·····	3-71
	3.9.4	HALT and HOLD Time Operation	3-74
3.10	) VCPW	۷M	
	3.10.1	Overview ·····	3-75
	3.10.2	Functions	3-75
	3.10.3	Circuit Configuration ·····	3-76
	3.10.4	Related Registers	3-78
3.11	I HPWN	M2 ······	3-84
	3.11.1	Overview ·····	3-84
	3.11.2	Functions	3-84
	3.11.3	Circuit Configuration	3-85
	3.11.4	Related Registers	3-87
3.12	2 Tempe	erature sensor ·····	3-90
	3.12.1	Overview ·····	3-90
	3.12.2	Functions	3-90
	3.12.3	Circuit Configuration	3-90
	3.12.4	Related Registers	3-92
	3.12.5	Example of Using Temperature sensor ·····	3-93
han	tor 1 (	Control Functions	
4.1		upt Function ······	
•••	4.1.1	Overview	
	4.1.2	Functions	
		Circuit Configuration	
	4.1.4	Related Registers	
4.2		m Clock Generator Function ·····	
4.2	4.2.1	Overview	
	4.2.1	Functions	
	4.2.2	Circuit Configuration	_
	4.2.4	Related Registers	
4.3		by Function ·····	
4.3	4.3.1	Overview	
	4.3.1	Functions·····	_
	_	Related Registers	
1 1	4.3.3	Function	
4.4		Overview	
	4.4.1		
	4.4.2	Functions Reset State	
	4.4.3	reser state	4-77

4.5	Watch	ndog Timer (WDT)······	4-23
	4.5.1	Overview ·····	4-23
	4.5.2	Functions	4-23
	4.5.3	Circuit Configuration ·····	4-24
	4.5.4	Related Registers·····	4-26
	4.5.5	Using the Watchdog Timer ······	4-28
	4.5.6	Notes on the Use of the Watchdog Timer	4-29
4.6	Intern	al Reset Function ·····	4-31
	4.6.1	Overview	4-31
	4.6.2	Functions	4-31
	4.6.3	Circuit Configuration ······	4-31
	4.6.4	Options ·····	4-32
	4.6.5	Sample Operating Waveforms of the Internal Reset Circuit	4-34
	4.6.6	Notes on the Use of the Internal Reset Circuit ······	
	4.6.7	Notes to be Taken When Not Using the Internal Reset Circuit	

Cor	ntei	nts
-----	------	-----

Appendix I Special Functions Register (SFR) Map	AI (	(1-8)
Appendix II Port Block Diagrams	All (	(1-7)

### 1. Overview

### 1.1 Overview

The LC870G00 series is an 8-bit microcontroller that, centered around a CPU running at a minimum bus cycle time of 83.3 ns, integrate on a single chip a number of hardware features such as 8K bytes of flash ROM (onboard programmable), 256 bytes of RAM, a sophisticated 16-bit timer/counter (may be divided into 8-bit timers), a 16-bit timer/counter (may be divided into 8-bit timers or 8-bit PWM modules), a 16-bit timer with a prescaler, a base timer serving as a time-of-day clock, an asynchronous/synchronous SIO interface, an 7-channel A/D converter with a 12-/8-bit resolution selector, a  $10x/20\times$  amplifier, a reference voltage generator circuit(2V/4V) for an AD converter, a comparator, a 8/10-bit High-speed PWM(150kHz), a 12-bit PWM x 2ch, a temperature sensor, a system clock frequency divider, an internal reset circuit, and 15-source 10-vector interrupt feature.

### 1.2 Features

#### Flash ROM

- Capable of on-board programming with a wide range of supply voltages: 2.2 to 5.5V
- · Block-erasable in 128 byte units
- · Writes data in 2-byte units
- $8192 \times 8$  bits

#### **RAM**

• 256×9 bits

#### **Bus Cycle Time**

```
• 83.3ns (12MHz, VDD=2.7V to 5.5V, Ta=-40 to 85)
```

- 125ns (8MHz, VDD=2.0V to 5.5V, Ta=-40 to 85
- 250ns (4MHz, VDD=1.8V to 5.5V, Ta=-40 to 85)

Note: The bus cycle time here refers to the ROM read speed.

#### **Minimum Instruction Cycle Time (tCYC)**

- 250ns (12MHz, VDD=2.7V to 5.5V, Ta=-40 to 85 )
- 375ns (8MHz, VDD=2.0V to 5.5V, Ta=-40 to 85)
- 750ns (4MHz, VDD=1,8V to 5.5V, Ta=-40 to 85)

#### Potrs

· Normal withstand voltage I/O ports whose I/O direction can be designated in 1-bit units

18(P0n,P1n,P70,CF1,CF2)

• Reset pins 1(RES)

• Power supply pins 3(VSS1, VSS2, VDD1)

Reference voltage outputs 1(VREF)
 Dedicated debugger port 1(OWP0)

#### **Timers**

• Timer 0 : 16-bit timer/counter with 2 capture registers.

Mode 0:8-bit timer with an 8-bit programmable prescaler (with two 8-bit capture registers)  $\times 2$  channels

Mode 1:8-bit timer with an 8-bit programmable prescaler (with two 8-bit capture registers)

+ 8-bit counter (with two 8-bit capture registers)

Mode 2:16-bit timer with an 8-bit programmable prescaler (with two 16-bit capture registers)

Mode 3:16-bit counter (with two 16-bit capture registers)

• Timer 1 : 16-bit timer/counter that supports PWM/toggle outputs

Mode 0: 8-bit timer with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle outputs) + 8-bit timer/counter with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle outputs)

Mode 1:8-bit PWM with an 8-bit prescaler  $\times$  2 channels

Mode 2:16-bit timer/counter with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle outputs)

(toggle outputs also possible from lower-order 8 bits)

Mode 3: 16-bit timer with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle outputs) (lower-order 8 bits may be used as a PWM output)

#### • Base timer

- (1) The clock is selectable from the subclock (32.768kHz crystal oscillation), the low speed RC, system clock, and timer 0 prescaler output.
- (2) with an 8-bit programmable prescaler
- (3) Interrupts programmable in 5 different time schemes

#### SIO

• SIO1 : 8-bit asynchronous/synchronous serial interface

Mode 0 : Synchronous 8-bit serial I/O (2- or 3-wire configuration, 2 to 512 tCYC transfer clocks)

Mode 1: Asynchronous serial I/O (half-duplex, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, 8 to 2048 tCYC baudrates)

Mode 2: Bus mode 1 (start bit, 8 data bits, 2 to 512 tCYC transfer clocks)

Mode 3: Bus mode 2 (start detect, 8 data bits, stop detect)

#### **AD Converter**

- AD converter input port with  $10\times/20\times$  amplifier (1channel)
- AD converter input port (7channel)

12-/8-bit resolution selectable AD converter

•Selectable reference voltage source for an AD converter

( Selectable from VDD , Internal Reference Voltage Generator  $\mbox{Circuit}(\mbox{VREF})$  .)

### Internal Reference Voltage Generator Circuit(VREF)

· Generates 2.0V/4.0V for AD converter.

#### Comparator

Comparator input pin (1 channel)

Comparator output pin (1 channel)

Comparator output set high when (comparator input level) < 1.22V

Comparator output set low when (comparator input level) > 1.22V

#### **Clock Output Function**

• Generates clocks with a clock rate of 1/1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32, or 1/64 of the source oscillation clock that is selected as the system clock.

#### **Watchdog Timer**

- Generates an internal reset on an overflow occurring in the timer running on the low-speed RC oscillator clock (approx. 30kHz) or subclock.
- Operating mode at standby is selectable from 3 modes (continue counting/suspend operation/suspend counting with the count value retained)

#### Interrupts

- 15 sources, 10 vectors
  - 1) Provides three levels (low (L), high (H), and highest (X)) of multiplex interrupt control. Any interrupt requests of

the level equal to or lower than the current interrupt are not accepted.

2) When interrupt requests to two or more vector addresses occur at the same time, the interrupt of the highest level

takes precedence over the other interrupts. For interrupts of the same level, the interrupt into the smallest vector address is given priority.

No.	Vector Address	Level	Interrupt Source
1	00003H	X or L	INT0
2	0000BH	X or L	INT1
3	00013H	H or L	INT2/T0L/INT4
4	0001BH	H or L	INT3/BT
5	00023H	H or L	тон
6	0002BH	H or L	T1L/T1H
7	00033H	H or L	HPWM2
8	0003BH	H or L	SIO1
9	00043H	H or L	ADC
10	0004BH	H or L	P0/VCPWM

- Priority levels X > H > L
- Of interrupts of the same level, the one with the smallest vector address takes precedence.

### Subroutine Stack Levels: Up to 128levels (the stack is allocated in RAM.)

### **High-speed Multiplication/Division Instructions**

16 bits × 8 bits
24 bits × 16 bits
16 bits ÷ 8 bits
24 bits ÷ 16 bits
16 tCYC execution time)
16 tCYC execution time)
16 tCYC execution time)
12 tCYC execution time)
12 tCYC execution time)

#### **Oscillation Circuits**

• Internal oscillation circuits

1) Low-speed RC oscillation circuit: For system clock (approx.30kHz)

2) Medium-speed RC oscillation circuit: For system clock (1MHz)

3) Hi-speed RC oscillation circuit1: For system clock (8MHz)
4) Hi-speed RC oscillation circuit2: For High speed PWM (40MHz)

### **System Clock Divider Function**

- Can run on low consumption current.
- Minimum instruction cycle selectable from 375ns, 750ns, 1.5μs, 3.0μs, 6.0μs, 12.0μs, 24.0μs, 48.0μs, and 96.0μs (at 8MHz main clock)

#### **Internal Reset** Circuit

- •Power-on reset (POR) function
  - 1) POR reset is generated only at power-on time.
  - 2) The POR release level is 1.67V.
- Low-voltage detection reset (LVD) function
  - 1) LVD and POR functions are combined to generate resets when power is turned on and when power voltage falls below a certain level.
  - 2) The use/disuse of the LVD function and the low voltage threshold level can be selected from 7 levels (1.91V, 2.01V, 2.31V, 2.51V, 2.81V, 3.79V and 4.28V). through option configuration.

#### **Standby Function**

- HALT mode: Halts instruction execution while allowing the peripheral circuits to continue operation.
  - 1) Oscillation is not halted automatically.
  - 2) There are three ways of resetting the HALT mode.
    - (1) Setting the reset pin to the low level
    - (2) Having the watchdog timer or LVD function generate a reset
    - (3) Having an interrupt generated
- HOLD mode: Suspends instruction execution and the operation of the peripheral circuits.
  - 1) The CF, RC and crystal oscillators automatically stop operation.

Note: The low-speed RC oscillator is controlled directly by the watchdog timer; its oscillation in the standby mode is also controlled by the watchdog timer.

- 2) There are four ways of resetting the HOLD mode:
  - (1) Setting the reset pin to the lower level
  - (2) Having the watchdog timer or LVD function generate a reset
  - (3) Having an interrupt source established at one of the INT0, INT1, INT2 and INT4 pins
    - \* INTO and INT1 can be used in the level sense mode only.
  - (4) Having an interrupt source established at port 0.
- X'tal HOLD mode: Suspends instruction execution and the operation of the peripheral circuits except the base timer.

(when X'tal oscillation or low-speed RC oscillation is selected).

1) The CF, low-speed, and medium-speed RC oscillators automatically stop operation.

Note: The low-speed RC oscillator is controlled directly by the watchdog timer; its oscillation in the standby mode is also controlled by the watchdog timer.

Note: If the base timer is run with low-speed RC oscillation selected as the base timer input clock source and the X'tal HOLD mode is entered, the low-speed RC oscillator retains the state that is established when the X'tal HOLD mode is entered.

- 2) The state of crystal oscillation established when the X'tal HOLD mode is entered is retained.
- 3) There are five ways of resetting the X'tal HOLD mode.
  - (1) Setting the reset pin to the low level
  - (2) Having the watchdog timer or LVD function generate a reset
  - (3) Having an interrupt source established at one of the INT0, INT1, INT2, and INT4 pins
    - \* INTO and INT1 can be used in the level sense mode only.
  - (4) Having an interrupt source established at port 0
  - (5) Having an interrupt source established in the base timer circuit

### VCPWM: Frequency tunable 12-bit PWM ×2ch

### High speed PWM (HPWM2)

8-/10- bits PWM ×1ch

- 1) The PWM clock is selectable from system clock and Hi-speed RC2 (40MHz)
- 2) The PWM type is selectable from 8 bits(Normal mode) and 10 bits( additive puls mode).

### **Temperature sensor**

Senseor voltage can be comapred by the AD converter.

### **On-chip Debugger Function**

- Supports software debugging with the IC mounted on the target board.
- Provides 1 channel of on-chip debugger pin. OWP0

#### **Data Security Function**

 $\bullet$  Protects the program data stored in flash memory from unauthorized read or copy.

Note: This data security function does not necessarily provide absolute data security.

### Package Form

• SSOP24 (225mil): Lead-free and halogen-free type

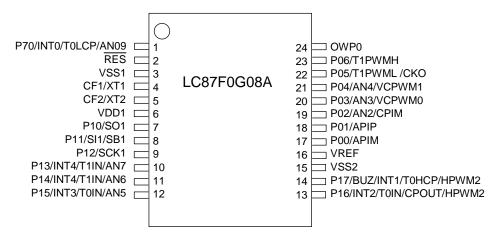
### **Development Tools**

• On-chip debugger: TCB87 Type C (1-wire interface cable) + LC87F0G08A

**Programming Board** 

Package	Programming board
SSOP24(225mil)	W87F0GQ

### 1.3 Pin Assignment

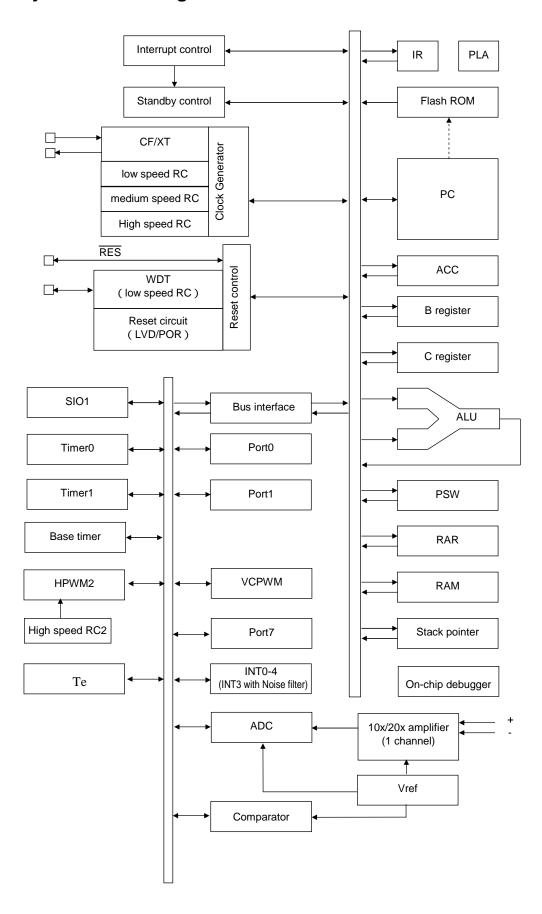


SSOP24(225mil) "Lead-/Halogen-free Type"

SSOP24	NAME
1	P70/INT0/T0LCP/AN09
2	RES
3	V <sub>SS</sub> 1
4	CF1/XT1
5	CF2/XT2
6	V <sub>DD</sub> 1
7	P10/SO1
8	P11/SI1/SB1
9	P12/SCK1
10	P13/INT4/T1IN/AN7
11	P14/INT4/T1IN/AN6
12	P15/INT3/T0IN/AN5

SSOP24	NAME
13	P16/INT2/T0IN/CPOUT/HPWM2
14	P17/BUZ/INT1/T0HCP/HPWM2
15	V <sub>SS</sub> 2
16	VREF
17	P00/APIM
18	P01/APIP
19	P02/AN2/CPIM
20	P03/AN3/VCPWM0
21	P04/AN4/VCPWM1
22	P05/T1PWML/CKO
23	P06/T1PWMH
24	OWP0

### 1.4 System Block Diagram



# 1.5 Pin Description

Pin Name	I/O	Description					Option	
V <sub>SS</sub> 1	-	- power supply pin					No	
V <sub>DD</sub> 1	-	+ power supply pin						No
V <sub>SS</sub> 2	-	- power supply pin						No
VREF	I/O	Reference	voltage outpu	t(2.0V/4.0V) o	r External inpu	ıt		No
OWP0	I/O	On-chip de	bugger pin					No
Port 0 P00 to P06	I/O	7-bit I/O port     I/O specifiable in 1-bit units.     Pull-up resistors can be turned on and off in 1-bit units.				Yes		
		P00 (ANO P02: AD ( P03: AD ( P04: AD ( P05: Time P06: Time	Pin functions P00 (AN0), P01 (AN1): AD converter input port with 10x/20x operational amplifier P02: AD converter input port (AN2) / Comparator input (CPIM) P03: AD converter input port (AN3) / VCPWM0 output P04: AD converter input port (AN4) / VCPWM1 output P05: Timer 1 PWML output / System clock output P06: Timer 1 PWMH output					
Port 1 P10 to P15	1/O	• Pull-up r • Pin funct P10: SIO P11: SIO P12: SIO P13: INT4 timer 0H P14: INT4 timer 0H P15: INT3 AD c P16: INT2 time	ifiable in 1-bit esistors can be sons 1 data output 1 data input/b 1 clock input/c4 input/HOLD capture input/ 4 input/HOLD capture input/ 3 input(with no converter input 2 input/HOLD r oL capture in	yes in 1-bit units. se can be turned on and off in 1-bit units.  output input/bus input/output /HOLD release input/timer 1 event input/timer 0L capture input/ e input/ AD converter input port (AN7) /HOLD release input/timer 1 event input/timer 0L capture input/ e input/ AD converter input port (AN6) (with noise filter)/timer 0 event input/timer 0H capture input/ ter input port (AN5) /HOLD release input/timer 0 event input/ apture input/HPWM2 output utput/INT1 input/HOLD release input/timer 0H capture		Yes		
		Interrup INT1 INT2 INT3 INT4	Rising enable enable enable enable enable	Falling enable enable enable enable	Rising & Falling disable enable enable enable	H level enable disable disable disable	L level enable disable disable disable	

Continued on next page

Continued from preceding page

No					port	• 1-bit I/O	I/O	Port 7
						· I/O spe		P70
			nd off.	be turned on a	resistors can	• Pull-up		
	onverter input	re input/AD co	/timer 0L captu	·	IT0 input/HOLI I9)	port (AN		
			D: : 0	ype	acknowledge t	Interrupt		
	L level	H level	Rising & Falling	Falling	Rising			
	enable	enable	disable	enable	enable	INT0		
Yes	External reset input/internal reset output pin Yes						I	RES
Internal								
pullup								
ON/OFF								
No		pin	l oscillator inpu	768kHz crysta	c oscillator/32.	Ceramie	I/O	CF1/XT1
					ctions	• Pin fund		
					port	• 1-bit I/O		
					cifiable	· I/O spe		
				)	lch-open drain	(only N		
No		ut pin	l oscillator outp	768kHz crysta	c oscillator/32.	Ceramie	I/O	CF2/XT2
					ctions	• Pin fund		
					port	• 1-bit I/O		
					cifiable	· I/O spe		
No					debugger pin	On-chip o	I/O	OWP0
					port cifiable	• 1-bit I/O	I/O	OWP0

## 1.6 On-chip Debugger Pin Connection Requirements

For the treatment of the on-chip debugger pins, refer to the separately available documents entitled "Rd87 On-chip Debugger Installation Manual"

### 1.7 Recommended Unused Pin Connections

Dark Name	Recommended Unused Pin Connections						
Port Name	Board	Software					
P00 to P07	Open	Output low					
P10 to P17	Open	Output low					
P70	Open	Output low					
CF1/XT1	Open	General I/O port output low					
CF2/XT2	Open	General I/O port output low					
OWP0	Pulled low with a 100kΩ resistor	-					

### 1.8 Port Output Types

The table below lists the types of port outputs and the presence/absence of a pull-up resistor.

Data can be read into any input port even if it is in the output mode.

Port Name	Option selected in units of	Option type	Output type	Pull-up resistor
P00 to P06	1 bit	1	CMOS	Programmable
		2	Nch-open drain	Programmable
P10 to P17	1 bit	1	CMOS	Programmable
		2	Nch-open drain	Programmable
CF1/XT1	-	No	Nch-open drain when general I/O port is selected.	No
CF2/XT2	-	No	CMOS / Nch-open drain when general I/O port is selected.(programmable)	No
P70	-	No	Nch-open drain	Programmable

1.9 User Option Table

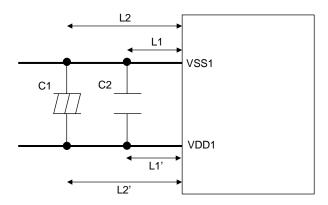
Option Name	Option Type	Flash Version	Option Selected in Units of	Option Selection
Port output form	Bas . Bas		4.15	CMOS
	P00 to P06	enable	1 bit	Nch-open drain
				CMOS
	P10 to P17	enable	1 bit	Nch-open drain
Program start address	-	enable	-	00000h or 01E00h When protected area 1) is selected
				When either of protected area 2), 3) or 4) is selected
Protected area				1) 1800h-1FFFh
<b>A.</b>		enable		2) 0000h-1DFFh,1F00h-1FFFh
(Note1)	-	enable	-	3) 0000h-1CFFh,1F00h-1FFFh
				4) 0000h-1AFFh,1F00h-1FFFh
Reset pin	Internal pullup ON/OFF	enable	-	ON OFF
Low-voltage	Datast foresting			Enable: Use
detection reset	Detect function	enable	-	Disable: Not Used
function	Detect level	enable	-	7-level
Power-on reset function	Power-On reset level	enable	-	1-level

Note1: onboard programming inhbited address

### 1.10 Power Pin Treatment Recommendations (VDD1, VSS1)

Connect bypass capacitors that meet the following conditions between the  $V_{\mbox{DD}}1$  and  $V_{\mbox{SS}}1$  pins:

- Connect among the V<sub>DD</sub>1 and V<sub>SS</sub>1 pins and bypass capacitors C1 and C2 with the shortest possible heavy lead wires, making sure that the impedances between the both pins and the bypass capacitors are as equal as possible (L1=L1', L2=L2').
- $\bullet$  Connect a large-capacity capacitor C1 and a small-capacity capacitor C2 in parallel. The capacitance of C2 should be approximately  $0.1\mu F$ .



### 2. Internal Configuration

### 2.1 Memory Space

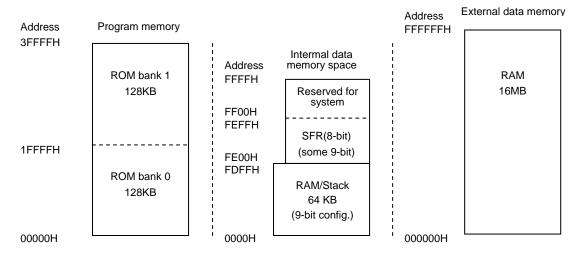
This series of microcontrollers has the following three types of memory space:

1) Program memory space: 256K bytes (128K bytes × 2 banks)

2) Internal data memory space: 64K bytes (0000H to FDFFH out of 0000H to FFFFH is shared

with the stack area.)

3) External data memory space: 16M bytes



Note: SFR is the area in which special registers such as the accumulator are allocated (see Appendix-I).

Fig. 2.1.1 Types of Memory Space

### 2.2 Program Counter (PC)

The program counter (PC) is made up of 17 bits and a bank flag BNK. The value of BNK determines the bank. The lower-order 17 bits of the PC allows linear access to the 128K ROM space in the current bank.

Normally, the PC advances automatically in the current bank on each execution of an instruction. Bank switching is accomplished by executing a Return instruction after pushing necessary addresses onto the stack. When executing a branch or subroutine instruction, when accepting an interrupt, or when a reset is generated, the value corresponding to each operation is loaded into the PC.

Table 2.2.1 lists the values that are loaded into the PC when the respective operations are performed.

Table 2.2.1 Values Loaded in the PC

		Operation	PC value	BNK value
Inter-	Reset		00000Н	0
rupt	INT0		00003H	0
	INT1		0000BH	0
	INT2/T0L/INT4		00013H	0
	INT3/BT		0001BH	0
	ТОН		00023H	0
	T1L/T1H		0002BH	0
	HPWM2		00033H	0
	SIO1		0003BH	0
	ADC		00043H	0
	P0/VCPWM		0004BH	0
Uncor			PC = a17	Unchanged
instru	ctions	BR r12	PC = PC + 2 + r12[-2048  to + 2047]	Unchanged
Condi	tional branch	BE, BNE, DBNZ, DBZ, BZ, BNZ, BZW, BNZW, BP, BN, BPC	PC = PC + nb + r8[-128  to + 127] nb: Number of instruction bytes	Unchanged
Call in	nstructions	CALL a17	PC = a17	Unchanged
		RCALL r12	PC = PC + 2 + r12[-2048  to + 2047]	Unchanged
		RCALLA	PC = PC + 1 + Areg[0  to  + 255]	Unchanged
Return	n instructions	RET, RETI	PC16 to 08 = (SP) PC07 to 00 = (SP-1) (SP) denotes the contents of RAM address designated by the value of the stack pointer SP.	BNK is set to bit 8 of (SP-1).
Stand	ard instructions	NOP, MOV, ADD,	PC = PC + nb nb: Number of instruction bytes	Unchanged

### 2.3 Program Memory (ROM)

This series of microcontrollers has a program memory space of 256K bytes but the size of the ROM that is actually incorporated in the microcontroller varies with the series of the microcontroller. The ROM table lookup instruction (LDC) can be used to refer all ROM data within the bank. Of the ROM space, the 256 bytes in ROM bank 0 (LC870A00 series: (1F00H to 1FFFH) are reserved as the option area. Consequently, this area is not available as a program area.

### 2.4 Internal Data Memory (RAM)

The LC870000 series microcontrollers has an internal data memory space of 64K bytes but the size of the RAM that is actually incorporated in the microcontroller varies with the series of the microcontroller. 9 bits are used to access addresses 0000H to FDFFH of the 128K ROM space and 8 or 9 bits are used to access addresses FE00H to FFFFH. The 9th bit of RAM is implemented by bit 1 of the PSW and can be read and written.

The 128 bytes of RAM from 0000H to 007FH are paired to form 64 2-byte and can also be used as 64 indirect address registers. The bit length of these indirect registers is normally 16 bits (8 bits  $\times$  2). When they are used by the ROM table lookup instruction (LDCW), however, their bit length is set to 17 bits (9 higher-order bits + 8 lower-order bits).

As shown in Figure 2.4.1, the usable instructions vary depending on the address of RAM.

The efficiency improvement of use ROM and execution speed can be attempted by using these instructions properly.

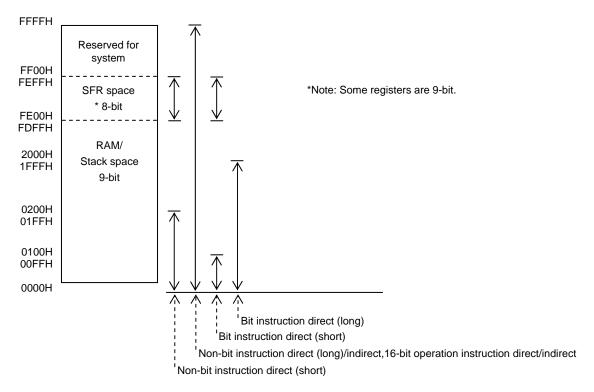


Fig. 2.4.1 RAM Addressing Map

When the value of the PC is stored in RAM during the execution of a subroutine call instruction or interrupt, assuming that SP represents the current value of the stack pointer, the value of BNK and the lower-order 8 bits of the (17-bit) PC are stored in RAM address SP+1 and the higher-order 9 bits in SP  $\pm$  2, after which SP is set to SP  $\pm$  2.

### 2.5 Accumulator/A Register (ACC/A)

The accumulator (ACC), also called the A register, is an 8-bit register that is used for data computation, transfer, and I/O processing. It is allocated to address FE00H in the internal data memory space and initialized to 00H on a reset.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE00	0000 0000	R/W	AREG	AREG7	AREG6	AREG5	AREG4	AREG3	AREG2	AREG1	AREG0

### 2.6 B Register (B)

The B register is combined with the ACC to form a 16-bit arithmetic register during the execution of a 16-bit arithmetic instruction. During a multiplication or division instruction, the B register is used with the ACC and C register to store the results of computation. In addition, during an external memory access instruction (LDX or STX), the B register designates the higher-order 8 bits of the 24-bit address.

The B register is allocated to address FE01H of the internal data memory space and initialized to 00H on a reset.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE01	0000 0000	R/W	BREG	BREG7	BREG6	BREG5	BREG4	BREG3	BREG2	BREG1	BREG0

### 2.7 C Register (C)

The C register is used with the ACC and B register to store the results of computation during the execution of a multiplication or division instruction. In addition, during a C register offset indirect instruction, the C register stores the offset data (-128 to +127) to the contents of an indirect register.

The C register is allocated to address FE02H of the internal data memory space and initialized to 00H on a reset.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE02	0000 0000	R/W	CREG	CREG7	CREG6	CREG5	CREG4	CREG3	CREG2	CREG1	CREG0

### 2.8 Program Status Word (PSW)

The program status word (PSW) is made up of flags that indicate the status of computation results, a flag to access the 9th bit of RAM, and a flag to designate the bank during the LDCW instruction. The PSW is allocated to address FE06H of the internal data memory space and initialized to 00H on a reset.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE06	0000 0000	R/W	PSW	CY	AC	PSWB5	PSWB4	LDCBNK	OV	P1	PARITY

### CY (bit 7): Carry flag

CY is set (to 1) when a carry occurs as the result of a computation and cleared (to 0) when no carry occurs. There are the following types of carries:

- <1> Carry resulting from an addition
- <2> Borrow resulting from a subtraction
- <3> Borrow resulting from a comparison
- <4> Carry resulting from a rotation

There are some instructions that do not affect this flag at all.

### AC (bit 6): Auxiliary carry flag

AC is set (to 1) when a carry or borrow occurs in bit 3 (bit 3 of the higher-order byte during a 16-bit computation) as the result of an addition or subtraction and cleared (to 0) otherwise.

There are some instructions that do not affect this flag at all.

### PSWB5, PSWB4 (bits 5 and 4): User bits

These bits can be read and written through instructions. They can be used by the user freely.

### LDCBNK (bit 3): Bank flag for the table lookup instruction (LDCW)

This bit designates the ROM bank to be specified when reading the program ROM with a table lookup instruction.

(0: ROM-ADR = 0 to 1FFFF, 1: ROM-ADR = 20000 to 3FFFF)

### OV (bit 2): Overflow flag

OV is set (to 1) when an overflow occurs as the result of an arithmetic operation and cleared (to 0) otherwise. An overflow occurs in the following cases:

- <1> When MSB is used as the sign bit and when the result of negative number + negative number or negative number positive number is a positive
- When MSB is used as the sign bit and when the result of positive number + positive number or positive number negative number is a negative number

- <3> When the higher-order 8 bits of a 16 bits  $\times$  8 bits multiplication is nonzero
- <4> When the higher-order 16 bits of a 24 bits  $\times$  16 bits multiplication is nonzero
- <5> When the divisor of a division is 0

There are some instructions that do not affect this flag at all.

### P1 (bit 1): RAM bit 8 data flag

P1 is used to manipulate bit 8 of 9-bit internal data RAM (0000H to FDFFH). Its behavior varies depending on the instruction executed. See Table 2.4.2 for details.

### PARITY (bit 0): Parity flag

This bit shows the parity of the accumulator (A register). The parity flag is set (to 1) when there are an odd number of 1s in the A register. It is cleared (to 0) when there are an even number of 1s in the A register.

### 2.9 Stack Pointer (SP)

The LC870000 series microcontrollers can use RAM addresses 0000H to FDFFH as a stack area. The size of RAM, however, varies depending on the model of the microcontroller. The SP is 16 bits long and made up of two registers: SPL (at address FE0AH) and SPH (at address FE0BH). It is initialized to 0000H on a reset.

The SP is incremented by 1 before data is saved in stack memory and decremented by 1 after the data is restored from stack memory.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE0A	0000 0000	R/W	SPL	SP7	SP6	SP5	SP4	SP3	SP2	SP1	SP0
FE0B	0000 0000	R/W	SPH	SP15	SP14	SP13	SP12	SP11	SP10	SP9	SP8

The value of the SP changes as follows:

<1> When the PUSH instruction is executed: SP = SP + 1, RAM (SP) = DATA

<2> When the CALL instruction is executed: SP = SP + 1, RAM (SP) = ROMBANK + ADL

SP = SP + 1, RAM(SP) = ADH

<3> When the POP instruction is executed: DATA = RAM (SP), SP = SP - 1

<4> When the RET instruction is executed: ADH = RAM (SP), SP = SP - 1

ROM BANK + ADL = RAM(SP), SP = SP - 1

### 2.10 Indirect Addressing Registers

The LC870000 series microcontrollers are provided with three addressing schemes ([Rn], [Rn + C], [off]) that use the contents of indirect registers (indirect addressing modes). (See Section 2.11 for the addressing modes.) Used for these addressing modes are 64 2-byte indirect registers (R0 to R63) allocated to RAM addresses 0 to 7EH. The indirect registers can also be used as general-purpose registers (e.g., for saving 2-byte data). Naturally, these addresses can be used as ordinary RAM (on a 1 byte (9 bits) basis) if they are not used as indirect registers. R0 to R63 are "system reserved words" to the assembler and need not be defined by the user.

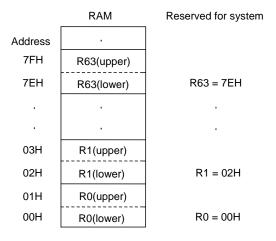


Fig. 2.10.1 Allocation of Indirect Registers

### 2.11 Addressing Modes

The LC870000 series microcontrollers support the following seven addressing modes:

- <1> Immediate (immediate data refers to data whose value has been established at program preparation (assembly) time.)
- <2> Indirect register (Rn) indirect (0 n 63)
- <3> Indirect register (Rn) + C register indirect (0 n 63)
- <4> Indirect register (R0) + Offset value indirect
- <5> Direct
- <6> ROM table look-up
- <7> External data memory access

The rest of this section describes these addressing modes.

### 2.11.1 Immediate Addressing (#)

The immediate addressing mode allows 8-bite (1-byte) or 16-bit (1-word) immediate data to be handled. Examples are given below.

### **Examples:**

	LD	#12H;	Loads the accumulator with byte data (12H).
L1:	LDW	#1234H;	Loads the BA register pair with word data (1234H).
	PUSH	#34H;	Loads the stack with byte data (34H).
	ADD	#56H;	Adds byte data (56H) to the accumulator.
	BE	#78H, L1;	Compares byte data (78H) with the accumulator for a branch.

### 2.11.2 Indirect Register Indirect Addressing ([Rn])

In the indirect register indirect addressing mode, it is possible to select one of the indirect registers (R0 to R63) and use its contents to designate an address in RAM or SFR. When the selected register contains, for example, "FE02H," it designates the C register.

### Examples: When R3 contains "123H" (RAM address 6: 23H, RAM address 7: 01H)

	LD	[R3];	Transfers the contents of RAM address 123H to the accumulator.
L1:	STW	[R3];	Transfers the contents of BA register pair to RAM address 123H.
	PUSH	[R3];	Saves the contents of RAM address123H in the stack.
	SUB	[R3];	Subtracts the contents of RAM address 123H from the accumulator.
	DBZ	[R3], L1;	Decrements the contents of RAM address 123H by 1 and causes a branch if
			zero.

### 2.11.3 Indirect Register + C Register Indirect Addressing ([Rn, C])

In the indirect register + C register indirect addressing mode, the result of adding the contents of one of the indirect registers (R0 to R63) to the contents of the C register (-128 to + 127 with MSB being the sign bit) designates an address in RAM or SFR. For example, if the selected indirect register contains "FE02H" and the C register contains "FFH (-1)," the address "B register (FE02H + (-1) = FE01H" is designated.

### Examples: When R3 contains "123H" and the C register contains "02H"

	LD	[R3, C];	Transfers the contents of RAM address 125H to the accumulator.
L1:	STW	[R3, C];	Transfers the contents of the BA register pair to RAM address 125H.
	PUSH	[R3, C];	Saves the contents of 125H in the stack.
	SUB	[R3, C];	Subtracts the contents of RAM address 125H from the accumulator.
	DBZ	[R3, C], L1;	Decrements the contents of RAM address 125H by 1 and causes a branch if
			zero.

#### <Notes on this addressing mode >

The internal data memory space is divided into three closed functional areas as explained in Section 2.1, namely, 1) system reserved area (FF00H to FFFFH), 2) SFR area (FE00H to FEFFH), and 3) RAM/stack area (0000H to FDFFH). Consequently, it is disallowed to point to a different area using the value of the C register from the basic area designated by the contents of Rn. For example, if the instruction "LD [R5,C]" is executed when R5 contains "0FDFFH" and the C register contains "1," since the basic area is 3) RAM/stack area (0000H to FDFFH), the intended address "0FDFFH + 1 = 0FE00H" lies outside the basic area and "0FFH" is consequently placed in the ACC. If the instruction "LD [R5,C]" is executed when R5 contains "0FEFFH" and the C register contains "2," since the basic area is 2) SFR area (FE00H to FEFFH), the intended address "0FEFFH + 2 = 0FF01H" lies outside the basic area. In this case, since SFR is confined in an 8-bit address space, the part of the address data addressing outside the 8-bit address space is ignored and the contents of 0FE01H (B register) are placed in the ACC as the result of the computation "0FF01H&0FFH + 0FE00H = 0FE01."

### 2.11.4 Indirect Register (R0) + Offset Value indirect Addressing ([off])

In this addressing mode, the results of adding the 7-bit signed offset data off (-64 to +63) to the contents of the indirect register R0 designate an address in RAM or SFR. If R0 contains "FE02H" and off has a value of "7EH(-2)," for example, the A register (FE02H + (-2) = FE00H) is designated.

### Examples: When R0 contains "123H" (RAM address 0: 23H, RAM address 1: 01H)

	LD	[10H];	Transfers the contents of RAM address 133H to the accumulator.
L1:	STW	[10H];	Transfers the contents of the BA register pair to RAM address 133H.
	PUSH	[10H];	Saves the contents of RAM address 133H in the stack.
	SUB	[10H];	Subtracts the contents of RAM address 133H from the accumulator.
	DBZ	[10H], L1;	Decrements the contents of RAM address 133H by 1 and causes a branch if
			zero.

### <Notes on this addressing mode>

The internal data memory space is divided into three closed functional areas as explained in Section 2.1, namely, 1) system reserved area (FF00H to FFFFH), 2) SFR area (FE00H to FEFFH), and 3) RAM/stack area (0000H to FDFFH). Consequently, it is disallowed to point to a different area using an offset value from the basic area designated by the contents of R0. For example, if the instruction "LD [1]" is executed when R0 contains "0FDFFH," since the basic area is 3) RAM/stack area (0000H to FDFFH), the intended address "0FDFFH+1 = 0FE00H" lies outside the basic area and "0FFH" is placed in the ACC as the results of LD. If the instruction "LD [2]" is executed when R0 contains "0FEFFH," since the basic area is 2) SFR (FE00H to FEFFH), the intended address "0FEFFH + 2 = 0FF01H" lies outside the basic area. In this case, since SFR is confined in an 8-bit address space, the part of the address data addressing outside the 8-bit address space is ignored and the contents of "0FE01H (B register) are placed in the ACC as the result of computation "0FF01H&0FFH + 0FE00H = 0FE01."

### 2.11.5 Direct Addressing (dst)

The direct addressing mode allows a RAM or SFR address to be specified directly in an operand. In this addressing mode, the assembler automatically generates optimum instruction code from the address specified in the operand (the number of instruction bytes varies according to the address specified in the operand). Long (middle) range instructions (identified by an "L (M)" at the end of the mnemonic) are available to make the byte count of instructions constant (align instructions with the longest one).

#### **Examples:**

	LD	123H;	Transfers the contents of RAM address 123H to the accumulator (2-byte instruction).
	LDL	123H;	Transfers the contents of RAM address 123H to the accumulator (3-byte instruction).
L1:	STW	123H;	Transfers the contents of the BA register pair to RAM address 123H.
	PUSH	123H;	Saves the contents of RAM address 123H in the stack.
	SUB	123H;	Subtracts the contents of RAM address 123H from the accumulator.
	DBZ	123H, L1;	Decrements the contents of RAM address 123H by 1 and causes a branch if zero.

### 2.11.6 ROM Table Look-up Addressing

The LC870000 series microcontrollers can read 2-byte data into the BA register pair at once using the LDCW instruction. Three addressing modes [Rn], [Rn, C], and [off] are available for this purpose. (In this case only, Rn are configured as 17-bit registers (128K-byte space)).

For models with banked ROM, it is possible to reference the ROM data in the ROM bank (128K bytes) identified by the LDCBNK flag (bit 3) in the PSW. Consequently, when looking into the ROM table on a series model with banked ROM, execute the LDCW instruction after switching the bank using the SET1 or CLR1 instruction so that the LDCBNK flag designates the ROM bank where the ROM table resides.

### **Examples:**

```
TBL: DB
               34H
     DB
               12H
     DW
               5678H
     LDW
                                  Loads the BA register pair with the TBL address.
               #TBL;
               (TBL >> 17) \& 1;
                                  Loads LDCBN K in PSW with bit 17 of the TBL address. (Note 1)
     CHGP3
               (TBL >> 16) \& 1;
                                  Loads P1 in PSW with bit 16 of the TBL address.
     CHGP1
     STW
                                  Load indirect register R0 with the TBL address (bits 16 to 0).
               R0;
     LDCW
                                  Reads the ROM table (B = 78H, ACC = 12H).
               [1];
     MOV
                                  Loads the C register with "01H."
               #1, C;
     LDCW
               [R0, C];
                                  Reads the ROM table (B = 78H, ACC = 12H).
     INC
               C;
                                  Increments the C register by 1.
     LDCW
               [R0, C];
                                  Reads the ROM table (B = 56H, ACC = 78H).
```

Note 1: LDCBNK (bit 3) of PSW need to be set up only for models with banked ROM.

### 2.11.7 External Data Memory Addressing

The LC870000 series microcontrollers can access external data memory spaces of up to 16M bytes (24 bits) using the LDX and STX instructions. To designate a 24-bit space, specify the contents of the B register (8 bits) as the highest-order byte of the address and the contents (16 bits) of (Rn), (Rn) + (C), or (R0) + off (either one) as the lower-order bytes of the address.

#### **Examples:**

LDW	#3456H;	Sets up the lower-order 16 bits.
STW	R5;	Loads the indirect register R5 with the lower-order 16 bits of the address.
MOV	#12H, B;	Sets up the higher-order 8 bits of the address.
LDX	[1];	Transfers the contents of external data memory (address 123456H) to the accumulator.

### 2.12 Wait Sequence

### 2.12.1 Wait Sequence Occurrence

The LC870A00 series of microcontrollers does not have wait sequences that automatically suspends execution of instructions.

### 2.12.2 What Is a Wait Sequence?

- 1) When a wait request occurs out of a factor explained in Subsection 2.12.1, the CPU suspends the execution of the instruction for one cycle, during which transfers the required data. This is called a wait sequence.
- 2) The peripheral circuits such as timers and PWM continue processing during the wait sequence.
- 3) A wait sequence extends over no more than two cycles.
- 4) The microprocessor performs no wait sequence when it is in the HALT or HOLD mode.
- 5) Note that one cycle of discrepancy is introduced between the progresses of the program counter and time once a wait sequence occurs.

Table 2.4.2 Chart of State Transitions of Bit 8 (RAM / SFR) and P1

Instruction	BIT8 (RAM/SFR)	P1 (PSW BIT 1)	Remarks
LD#/LDW#	_	_	
LD	-	P1←REG8	
LDW	_	P1←REGH8	
ST	REG8←P1	_	
STW	REGL8, REGH8←P1	_	
MOV	REG8←P1	_	
PUSH#	RAM8←P1	_	
PUSH	RAM8←REG8	P1←REG8	
PUSHW	RAMH8←REGH8, RAML8←REGL8	P1←REGH8	
PUSH_P	RAM8←Pl	_	
PUSH_BA	RAMH8←P1, RAML8←P1	_	
POP	REG8←RAM8	P1←RAM8	P1←bit1 when PSW is popped
POPW	REGH8←RAMH8, REGL8←RAML8	Pl←RAMH8	P1←bit1 when higher- order address of PSW is popped
POP_P	_	P1←RAMl (bit l)	BIT8 ignored
POP_BA	_	P1←RAMH8	
XCH	REG8C↔P1	Same as left.	
XCHW	REGH8←P1, REGL8←Pl, P1←REGH8	Same as left.	
INC	INC 9 bits	P1←REG8 after computation	INC 9 bits
INCW	INC 17 bits, REGL8←lower byte of CY	P1←REGH8 after computation	INC 17 bits
DEC	DEC 9 bits	P1←REG8 after computation	DEC 9 bits
DECW	DEC 17 bits, REGL8← lower byte of CY inverted	P1←REGH8 after computation	DEC 17 bits
DBNZ	DEC 9 bits	P1←REG8	DEC 9 bits, check lower-order 8 bits
DBZ	DEC 9 bits	P1←REG8	DEC 9 bits, check lower-order 8 bits
SET1	-	_	
NOT1	_	_	
CLR1	_	_	
BPC	-	-	
BP	-	-	
BN	-	_	
MUL24 /DIV24	RAM8←"1"	-	Bit 8 of RAM address for storing results is set to 1.
FUNC	-	-	

Note: A "1" is read if the processing target is an 8-bit register (no bit 8).

Legends:

REG8: Bit 8 of a RAM or SFR location

REGH8/REGL8: Bit 8 of the higher-order byte of a RAM location or SFR/bit 8 of the lower-order byte

RAM8: Bit 8 of a RAM location

RAMH8/RAML8: Bit 8 of the higher-order byte of a RAM location/bit 8 of the lower-order byte

### 3. Peripheral System Configuration

This chapter describes the built-in functional blocks (peripheral system) of this series of microcontrollers except the CPU core, RAM, and ROM.

Port block diagrams are provided in Appendix-II for reference.

### 3.1 Port 0

### 3.1.1 Overview

Port 0 is an 7-bit I/O port equipped with programmable pull-up resistors. It is made up of a data latch, a data direction register, and a control circuit. Control of the input/output signal direction is accomplished through the data direction register in 1-bit units.

This port can also serve as a pin for external interrupts and can release the HOLD mode. As a user option, either CMOS output with a programmable pull-up resistor or N-channel open drain output with a programmable pull-up resistor can be selected as the output type on a bit basis.

### <Notes on the flash ROM version>

Do not apply a clock or low vololtage level or any medium voltage level signal to the port OWPO.

For the treatment of the on-chip debugger pins, refer to the separately available documents entitled "RD87 On-chip Debugger Installation Manual" and "LC870000 Series On-chip Debugger Pin Processing."

### 3.1.2 Functions

- 1) Input/output port (7 bits: P00- P06)
  - The port output data is controlled by port 0 data latch (P0: FE40), and the I/O direction is controlled by the port 0 direction register (P0DDR: FE41).
  - Each port bit is provided with a programmable pull-up resistor.
- 2) Interrupt pin function

P0FLG (P0FCR: FE42, bit 5) is set when an input port is specified and 0 level data is input to one of port bits whose corresponding bit in the port 0 data latch (P0: FE40) is set to 1.

In this case, if P0IE (P0FCR: FE42, bit 4) is 1, the HOLD mode is released and an interrupt request to vector address 004BH is generated.

#### 3) Multiplexed pin

Pin P06 also serves as the Timer1 PWMH output pin, pin P05 also serves as the system clock output pin /Timer1 PWML output pin, pin P04 also serves as the VCPWM1 output pin, pin P03 also serves as the VCPWM0 output pin, pins P02 to P04 as the AD input channel pins AN2 to AN4, pin P02 also serves as the comparator output pin, and pins P00 and P01 as AD input pin with a  $10\times/20\times$  operational amplifier.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE40	0000 0000	R/W	P0	FIX0	P06	P05	P04	P03	P02	P01	P00
FE41	0000 0000	R/W	P0DDR	FIX0	P06DDR	P05DDR	P04DDR	P03DDR	P02DDR	P01DDR	P00DDR
FE42	0000 0000	R/W	P0FCR	T1HPWMEN	T1LPWMEN	P0FLG	POIE	CLKOEN	CKODV2	CKODV1	CKODV0

### 3.1.3 Related Registers

### 3.1.3.1 Port 0 data latch (P0)

- 1) The port 0 data latch is an 8-bit register for controlling port 0 output data and port 0 interrupts. (Bit7 must always set to 0.)
- 2) When this register is read with an instruction, data at pins P00 to P06 is read in. If P0 (FE40) is manipulated with an instruction NOT1, CLR1, SET1, DBZ, DBNZ, INC, or DEC, the contents of the register are referenced instead of the data at port pins.

(The value of bit7 should be ignored.)

3) Port 0 data can always be read regardless of the I/O state of the port.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE40	0000 0000	R/W	P0	FIX0	P06	P05	P04	P03	P02	P01	P00

### 3.1.3.2 Port 0 data direction register (P0DDR)

- 1) The port 0 data direction register is an 8-bit register that controls the I/O direction of port 0 data in 1-bit units. A 1 in bit P0nDDR places port P0n into the output mode, and a 0 places into the input mode. ( Bit7 must always set to 0. )
- 2) When bit P0nDDR is set to 0 and bit P0n of port 0 data latch is set to 1, the port P0n is an input with a pull-up resistor.
- P04DDR must be set to 0 for VCPWM1 output.
   In this case, pin P04 can output a VCPWM1 output even if P04DDR is 0.
- 4) P03DDR must be set to 0 for VCPWM0 output.In this case, pin P03 can output a VCPWM0 output even if P03DDR is 0.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE41	0000 0000	R/W	P0DDR	FIX0	P06DDR	P05DDR	P04DDR	P03DDR	P02DDR	P01DDR	P00DDR

Regist	er Data		Port P0n State					
P0n	P0nDDR	Input	Output	Resistor				
0	0	Enabled	Open	OFF				
1	0	Enabled	Internal pull-up resistor	ON				
0	1	Enabled	Low	OFF				
1	1	Enabled	High/open (CMOS/N-channel open drain)	OFF				

### 3.1.3.3 Port 0 Function Control Register (P0FCR)

1) The port 0 function control register is a 6-bit register that controls the shared output of port 0.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE42	0000 0000	R/W	P0FCR	T1HPWMEN	T1LPWMEN	P0FLG	POIE	CLKOEN	CKODV2	CKODV1	CKODV0

### T1HPWMEN (bit 7): timer 1 PWMH output control

When P06 is placed in the output mode (P06DDR = 1), the EOR of (AND of this bit and timer 1 PWMH output) and the port data latch is placed at pin P06.

T1HPWMEN	P06	P06 Pin Data in Output Mode (P06DDR = 1)				
0	_	Value of port data latch (P06)				
1	0	Timer 1 PWMH data				
1	1	Inversion of the above				

#### LC870G00 Chapter 3

#### T1LPWMEN (bit 6): timer 1 PWML output control

When P05 is placed in the output mode (P05DDR = 1), the EOR of (OR of (AND of this bit and timer 1 PWML output) and the system clock) and port data latch is placed at pin P05.

T1LPWMEN	CLKOEN	P05	P05 Pin Data in Output Mode (P05DDR = 1)				
0	0	_	Value of port data latch (P05)				
0	1	0	0 The system clock				
0	1	1	Inversion of the above				
1	0	0	Timer 1 PWML data				
1	0	1	Inversion of the above				
1	1	0	The OR of timer 1 PWML data and the system clock				
1	1	1	Inversion of the above				

#### P0FLG (bit 5): P0 interrupt source flag

This flag is set when a low level is applied to a port 0 pin specified as input and the corresponding P0 (FE40) bit is set.

A HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 004BH are generated when both this bit and the interrupt request enable bit (P0IE) are set to 1.

This bit must be cleared with an instruction as it is not cleared automatically.

### P0IE (bit 4): P0 interrupt request enable

Setting this bit and P0FLG to 1 generates a HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 004BH.

#### CLKOEN (bit 3):

This bit controls the output data of pin P05.

This bit is disabled when P05 is in the input mode.

When P05 is in the output mode, P05 outputs data as summarized in the above table.

### CKODV2 (bit 2):

#### CKODV1 (bit 1):

#### CKODV0 (bit 0):

These bits define the frequency of the system clock to be placed at P05.

000: Frequency of source oscillator selected as system clock

001: 1/2 of frequency of source oscillator selected as system clock

010: 1/4 of frequency of source oscillator selected as system clock

011: 1/8 of frequency of source oscillator selected as system clock

100: 1/16 of frequency of source oscillator selected as system clock

101: 1/32 of frequency of source oscillator selected as system clock

110: 1/64 of frequency of source oscillator selected as system clock

111: Frequency of source oscillator selected as subclock

### <Notes on the use of the clock output feature>

Take notes <1> to <3> given below when using the clock output feature. Anomalies may be observed in the waveform of the port clock output if these notes are violated.

- <1> Do not change the frequency of the clock output when CLKOEN (bit 3) is set to 1.
  - → Do not change the settings of CKODV2 to CKODV0 (bits 2-0).
- <2> Do not change the system clock selection when CLKOEN (bit 3) is set to 1.
  - → Do not change the settings of CLKCB5 and CLKCB4 (bits 5 and 4) of the OCR register.

### **PORTS**

<3> CLKOEN will not go to 0 immediately even when the user executes an instruction that loads the P0FCR register with such data that sets the state of CLKOEN from 1 to 0. CLKOEN is set to 0 at the end of the clock that is being output (on detection of a falling edge of the clock). Accordingly, when changing the clock divider setting or changing the system clock selection after setting CLKOEN to 0 with an instruction, be sure to read the CLKOEN value in advance and make sure that it is 0.

### 3.1.4 Options

Two user options are available.

CMOS output (with a programmable pull-up resistor)
 N-channel open drain output (with a programmable pull-up resistor)

### 3.1.5 HALT and HOLD Mode Operation

When in the HALT or HOLD mode, port 0 retains the state that is established when the HALT or HOLD mode is entered.

### LC870G00 Chapter 3

### 3.2 Port 1

### 3.2.1 Overview

Port 1 is an 8-bit I/O port equipped with programmable pull-up resistors. It is made up of a data latch, a data direction register, a function control register and a control circuit. Control of the input/output signal direction is accomplished by the data direction register on a bit basis. Port 1 can also be used as a serial interface I/O port , a HPWM2 output port , or a comparator output port by manipulating its function control register.

As a user option, either CMOS output with a programmable pull-up resistor or N-channel open drain output with a programmable pull-up resistor can be selected as the output type on a bit basis.

### 3.2.2 Functions

- 1) I/O port (8 bits: P10 to P17)
  - The port output data is controlled by the port 1 data latch (P1: FE44) and the I/O direction is controlled by the port 1 data direction register (P1DDR: FE45).
  - Each port bit is provided with a programmable pull-up resistor.
- 2) Interrupt input pin function
  - P17 is assigned to INT1 and used to detect the low level, high level, low edge, or high edge of the interrupt signal and sets the corresponding interrupt flag.
  - P16 and P15 are assigned to INT2 and INT3, respectively, and used to detect the low edge, high edge, or both edges of the interrupt signal and set the corresponding interrupt flag.
  - A port (INT4) selected out of P13 and P14 are used to detect the low edge, high edge, or both edges of the interrupt signal and sets the corresponding interrupt flag.
- 4) Timer 0 count input function

A count signal is sent to timer 0 each time a signal change such that the interrupt flag is set is supplied to the port selected from P16 and P15.

5) Timer 0L capture input function

A timer 0L capture signal is generated each time a signal change such that the interrupt flag is set is supplied to the port selected from P70, P16, P14, and P13.

When a selected level of signal is input to P70 that is specified for level-triggered interrupts, a timer 0L capture signal is generated at 1 cycle interval.

6) Timer 0H capture input function

A timer 0H capture signal is generated each time a signal change such that the interrupt flag is set is supplied to the port selected from P17, P15, P14, and P13.

When a selected level of signal is input to P17 that is specified for level-triggered interrupts, a timer 0H capture signal is generated at 1 cycle interval. This continues while the input is present.

7) Timer 1 count input function

A count signal is sent to timer 1 each time a signal change such that the interrupt flag is set is supplied to the port selected from P14 and P13.

### LC870G00 Chapter 3

### 8) HOLD mode release function

- When the interrupt flag and interrupt enable flag are set by INT0 (P70), INT1 (P17), INT2 (P16), or INT4 (P14 or P13), a HOLD mode release signal is generated, releasing the HOLD mode. The CPU then enters the HALT mode (main oscillation by CR). When the interrupt is accepted, the CPU switches from the HALT mode to normal operating mode.
- The interrupt flag cannot be set, however, by a rising edge occurring when INT2 (P16) data which is established when the HOLD mode is entered, is in the high state or by a falling edge occurring when P16 data which is established when the HOLD mode is entered, is in the low state. Consequently, to release the HOLD mode with P16, it is recommended that P16 be used in the double edge interrupt mode.

### 9) Multiplexed pin function

P17 is also used as the HPWM2 or base timer buzzer output, P16 as the timer HPWM2 output or comparator output, pins P13 to P15 as AD input channel AN7 to AN5, and P12 to P10 for SIO1 I/O.

	Input	Output	Interrupt Input Signal Detection	Timer Count Input	Capture Input	Hold Mode Release
P17	With	CMOS/N-channel	L level, H level,	-	Timer 0H	Enabled
	programmable	open drain	L edge, H edge			(Note)
P16	pull-up		L edge, H edge,	Timer 0	Timer 0L	Enabled
P15	resistor		both edges	Timer 0	Timer 0H	-
P14				Timer 1	Timer 0L,H	Enabled
P13				Timer 1	Timer 0L,H	Enabled

*Note: HOLD mode of P17 can be released only when it is set for level detection.* 

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE44	0000 0000	R/W	P1	P17	P16	P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10
FE45	0000 0000	R/W	P1DDR	P17DDR	P16DDR	P15DDR	P14DDR	P13DDR	P12DDR	P11DDR	P10DDR
FE46	0000 0000	R/W	P1FCR	P17FCR	P16FCR	P15FCR	P14FCR	P13FCR	P12FCR	P11FCR	P10FCR
FE47	0Н0Н ННН0	R/W	P1TST	FIX0	1	FIX0	-	ı	-	1	FIX0
FE4A	0000 0000	R/W	I45CR	INT5HEG	INT5LEG	INT5IF	INT5IE	INT4HEG	INT4LEG	INT4IF	INT4IE
FE4B	0000 0000	R/W	I45SL	I5SL3	I5SL2	I5SL1	I5SL0	I4SL3	I4SL2	I4SL1	I4SL0
FE5D	0000 0000	R/W	I01CR	INT1LH	INT1LV	INT1IF	INT1IE	INT0LH	INT0LV	INT0IF	INT0IE
FE5E	0000 0000	R/W	I23CR	INT3HEG	INT3LEG	INT3IF	INT3IE	INT2HEG	INT2LEG	INT2IF	INT2IE
FE5F	0000 0000	R/W	ISL	ST0HCP	ST0LCP	BTIMC1	BTIMC0	BUZON	NFSEL	NFON	ST0IN

Bit 7, bit 5, and bit 0 of P1TST (FE47) must always be set to 0.

# 3.2.3 Related Registers

### 3.2.3.1 Port 1 data latch (P1)

- 1) The port 1 data latch is an 8-bit register for controlling port 1 output data and pull-up resistors.
- 2) When this register is read with an instruction, data at pins P10 to P17 is read in. If P1 (FE44) is manipulated with an instruction NOT1, CLR1, SET1, DBZ, DBNZ, INC, or DEC, the contents of the register are referenced instead of the data at port pins.
- 3) Port 1 data can always be read regardless of the I/O state of the port.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE44	0000 0000	R/W	P1	P17	P16	P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10

### 3.2.3.2 Port 1 data direction register (P1DDR)

1) The port 1 data direction register is an 8-bit register that controls the I/O direction of port 1 data on a bit basis. Port P1n are placed in the output mode when bit P1nDDR is set to 1 and in the input mode when bit P1nDDR is set to 0.

2) When bit P1nDDR is set to 0 and the bit P1n of the port 1 data latch is set to 1, port P1n becomes an input with a pull-up resistor.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE45	0000 0000	R/W	P1DDR	P17DDR	P16DDR	P15DDR	P14DDR	P13DDR	P12DDR	P11DDR	P10DDR

Regist	er Data		Port P1n State	Built-in Pull-up
P1n	P1n P1nDDR		Output	Resistor
0	0	Enabled	Open	OFF
1	0	Enabled	Built-in pull-up resister	ON
0	1	Enabled	Low	OFF
1	1	Enabled	High/open (CMOS/N-channel open drain)	OFF

# 3.2.3.3 Port 1 function control register (P1FCR)

1) The port 1 function control register is an 8-bit register that controls the shared output of port 1.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE46	0000 0000	R/W	P1FCR	P17FCR	P16FCR	P15FCR	P14FCR	P13FCR	P12FCR	P11FCR	P10FCR

n	P1nFCR	P1n	P1n Pin Data in Output Mode (P1nDDR = 1)
7	0	_	Value of port data latch (P17)
	1	0	HPWM2 data or base timer buzzer data
	1	1	HPWM2 data or base timer buzzer inverted data
6	0	_	Value of port data latch (P16)
	1	0	AND of timer HPWM2 and comparator output
	1	1	Inversion of (AND of the above
5	0	_	Value of port data latch (P15)
	1	0	Low output
	1	1	High output
4	0	_	Value of port data latch (P14)
	1	0	Low output
	1	1	High output
3	0	_	Value of port data latch (P13)
	1	0	Low output
	1	1	High output
2	0	_	Value of port data latch (P12)
	1	0	SIO1 clock output data
	1	1	High output
1	0	_	Value of port data latch (P11)
	1	0	SIO1 output data
	1	1	High output
0	0	_	Value of port data latch (P10)
	1	0	SIO1 output data
	1	1	High output

The high data output pins P10 to P17 that are selected as N-channel open drain outputs (by user option) is represented by an open circuit.

# P17FCR (bit 7): P17 function control (HPWM2 or base timer buzzer output control)

This bit controls the output data at pin P17.

When P17 is placed in the output mode (P17DDR = 1) and P17FCR is set to 1, the EOR of HPWM2 output or buzzer output from the base timer and the port data latch is placed at pin 17.

\* The selection between HPWM2 and base timer buzzer output is accomplished by the P17H2ASL (HPWM2AL: FE8E, bit1) and the BUZSEL (ISL: FE5F, bit 3).

P17H2ASL	BUZON	P17	P17 Pin Data in Output Mode (P17DDR = 1)
(HPWM2AL bit1))	(ISL bit3)		
0	0	_	Value of port data latch (P17)
0	1	0	base timer buzzer output
0	1	1	Inversion of the above
1	_	0	HPWM2 data
1	_	1	Inversion of the above

# P16FCR (bit 6): P16 function control (HPWM2 output control)

This bit controls the output data at pin P16.

When P16 is placed in the output mode (P16DDR = 1) and P16FCR is set to 1, the EOR of (AND of HPWM2 output data and comparator output) and the port data latch data is placed at pin 16.

\* The comparator output is set to 0 when CPON (VRCNT bit 5) is set to 1. Consequently, when P16 is placed in the output mode (P16DDR = 1) and P16FCR is set to 1, the EOR of the HPWM2 output and port data latch is placed at pin P16.

P16H2ASL	CPON	P16	P16 Pin Data in Output Mode (P16DDR = 1)
(HPWM2AL bit0))	(VRCNT bit5)		
0	X	-	Value of port data latch (P16)
1	0	0	HPWM2 data
1	0	1	Inversion of the above
1	1	0	AND of HPWM2 data and comparatpor output
1	1	1	Inversion of the above

### P15FCR (bit 5): P15 function control

This bit controls the output data at pin P15.

When P15 is placed in the output mode (P15DDR = 1) and P15FCR is set to 1, the value of port data latch is placed at pin 15.

### P14FCR (bit 4): P14 function control

This bit controls the output data at pin P14.

When P14 is placed in the output mode (P14DDR = 1) and P14FCR is set to 1, the value of port data latch is placed at pin P14.

### P13FCR (bit 3): P13 function control

This bit controls the output data at pin P13.

When P13 is placed in the output mode (P13DDR = 1) and P13FCR is set to 1, the value of port data latch is placed at pin P13.

# P12FCR (bit 2): P12 function control (SIO1 clock output control)

This bit controls the output data at pin P12.

When P12 is placed in the output mode (P12DDR = 1) and P12FCR is set to 1, the OR of the SIO1 clock output data and the port data latch is placed at pin P12.

### P11FCR (bit 1): P11 function control (SIO1 data output control)

This bit controls the output data at pin P11.

When P11 is placed in the output mode (P11DDR = 1) and P11FCR is set to 1, the OR of the SIO1 output data and the port data latch is placed at pin P11.

When the SIO1 is active, SIO1 input data is read from P11 regardless of the I/O state of P11.

# P10FCR (bit 0): P10 function control (SIO0 data output control)

This bit controls the output data at pin P10.

When P10 is placed in the output mode (P10DDR = 1) and P10FCR is set to 1, the OR of the SIO1 output data and the port data latch is placed at pin P10.

### LC870G00 Chapter 3

### 3.2.3.4 External interrupt 4/5 control register (I45CR)

1) The external interrupt 4/5 control register is an 8-bit register for controlling external interrupts 4 and 5.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE4A	0000 0000	R/W	I45CR	INT5HEG	INT5LEG	INT5IF	INT5IE	INT4HEG	INT4LEG	INT4IF	INT4IE

INT5HEG (bit 7) to INT5IE (bit 4): Must always be set to 0.

INT4HEG (bit 3): INT4 rising edge detection control

INT4LEG (bit 2): INT4 falling edge detection control

INT4HEG	INT4LEG	INT4 Interrupt Conditions (Pin Data)
0	0	No edge detected
0	1	Falling edge detected
1	0	Rising edge detected
1	1	Both edges detected

### INT4IF (bit 1): INT4 interrupt source flag

This bit is set when the conditions specified by INT4HEG and INT4LEG are satisfied.

When this bit and the INT4 interrupt request enable bit (INT4IE) are set to 1, a HOLD mode reset signal and an interrupt request to vector address 0013H are generated.

The interrupt flag, however, cannot be set by a rising edge occurring when INT4 data which is established when the HOLD mode is entered is in the high state or by a falling edge occurring when INT4 data which is established when the HOLD mode is entered is in the low state. Consequently, to release the HOLD mode with INT4, it is recommended that INT4 be used in the double edge interrupt mode.

This bit must be cleared with an instruction as it is not cleared automatically.

# INT4IE (bit 0): INT4 interrupt request enable

When this bit and INT4IF are set to 1, a HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 0013H are generated.

### 3.2.3.5 External interrupt 4/5 pin select register (I45SL)

1) The external interrupt 4/5 pin select register is an 8-bit register used to select pins for the external interrupts 4 and 5.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE4B	0000 0000	R/W	I45SL	I5SL3	I5SL2	I5SL1	I5SL0	I4SL3	I4SL2	I4SL1	I4SL0

I5SL3 (bit 7) to I5SL0 (bit4): Must always be set to 0.

I4SL3 (bit 3): INT4 pin select

I4SL2 (bit 2): INT4 pin select

I4SL3	I4SL2	Pin Assigned to INT4
0	0	Port P13
0	1	Port P14
1	0	Inhibited
1	1	Inhibited

# I4SL1 (bit 1): INT4 pin function select

### I4SL0 (bit 0): INT4 pin function select

When the data change specified by the external interrupt 4/5 control register (I45CR) is given to the pin that is assigned to INT4, timer 1 count clock input and timer 0 capture signal are generated.

I4SL1	I4SL0	Function other than INT4 Interrupt
0	0	None
0	1	Timer 1 count clock input
1	0	Timer 0L capture signal input
1	1	Timer 0H capture signal input

#### Notes:

- 1) If the timer 0L or 0H capture signal input is specified together with port 7 for INT4, any signal from port 7 is ignored.
- 2) If INT4 is specified for timer 1 count clock input and timer 0L or 0H capture signal input at the same time, both inputs are accepted.
- 3) If timer 1 count clock input is specified for INT4, timer 1L serves as an event counter. If the timer 1 count clock input is not specified, timer 1L counts every 2Tcyc.

### 3.2.3.6 External interrupt 0/1 control register (I01CR)

1) The external interrupt 0/1 control register is an 8-bit register for controlling external interrupts 0 and 1.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE5D	0000 0000	R/W	I01CR	INT1LH	INT1LV	INT1IF	INT1IE	INT0LH	INT0LV	INT0IF	INT0IE

### INT1LH (bit 7): INT1 detection polarity select

# INT1LV (bit 6): INT1 detection level/edge select

INT1LH	INT1LV	INT1 Interrupt Conditions (P17 Pin Data)
0	0	Falling edge detected
0	1	Low level detected
1	0	Rising edge detected
1	1	High level detected

### INT1IF (bit 5): INT1 interrupt source flag

This bit is set when the conditions specified by INT1LH and INT1LV are satisfied. When this bit and the INT1 interrupt request enable bit (INT1IE) are set to 1, a HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 000BH are generated.

This bit must be cleared with an instruction as it is not cleared automatically.

# INT1IE (bit 4): INT1 interrupt request enable

When this bit and INT1IF are set to 1, a HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 000BH are generated.

### INT0LH (bit 3): INT0 detection polarity select

### INT0LV (bit 2): INT0 detection level/edge select

INT0LH	INT0LV	INT0 Interrupt Conditions (P70 Pin Data)
0	0	Falling edge detected
0	1	Low level detected
1	0	Rising edge detected
1	1	High level detected

### INT0IF (bit 1): INT0 interrupt source flag

This bit is set when the conditions specified by INT0LH and INT0LV are satisfied. When this bit and the INT0 interrupt request enable bit (INT0IE) are set to 1, a HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 0003H are generated.

This bit must be cleared with an instruction as it is not cleared automatically.

### INT0IE (bit 0): INT0 interrupt request enable

When this bit and INT0IF are set to 1, a HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 0003H are generated.

### 3.2.3.7 External interrupt 2/3 control register (I23CR)

1) The external interrupt 2/3 control register is an 8 bit register for controlling external interrupts 2 and 3.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE5E	0000 0000	R/W	I23CR	INT3HEG	INT3LEG	INT3IF	INT3IE	INT2HEG	INT2LEG	INT2IF	INT2IE

### INT3HEG (bit 7): INT3 rising edge detection control

### INT3LEG (bit 6): INT3 falling edge detection control

INT3HEG	INT3LEG	INT3 Interrupt Conditions (P15 Pin Data)
0	0	No edge detected
0	1	Falling edge detected
1	0	Rising edge detected
1	1	Both edges detected

### INT3IF (bit 5): INT3 interrupt source flag

This bit is set when the conditions specified by INT3HEG and INT3LEG are satisfied. When this bit and the INT3 interrupt request enable bit (INT3IE) are set to 1, an interrupt request to vector address 001BH are generated.

This bit must be cleared with an instruction as it is not cleared automatically.

### INT3IE (bit 4): INT3 interrupt request enable

When this bit and INT3IF are set to 1, an interrupt request to vector address 001BH is generated.

### INT2HEG (bit 3): INT2 rising edge detection control

# INT2LEG (bit 2): INT2 falling edge detection control

INT2HEG	INT2LEG	INT2 Interrupt Conditions (P16 Pin Data)
0	0	No edge detected
0	1	Falling edge detected
1	0	Rising edge detected
1	1	Both edges detected

### INT2IF (bit 1): INT2 interrupt source flag

This bit is set when the conditions specified by INT2HEG and INT2LEG are satisfied.

When this bit and the INT2 interrupt request enable bit (INT2IE) are set to 1, a HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 0013H are generated.

The interrupt flag cannot be set, however, by a rising edge occurring when P16 data which is established when the HOLD mode is entered is in the high state or by a falling edge occurring when P16 data which is established when the HOLD mode is entered is in the low state. Consequently, to release the HOLD mode with P16, it is recommended that P16 be used in the double edge interrupt mode.

This bit must be cleared with an instruction as it is not cleared automatically.

### INT2IE (bit 0): INT2 interrupt request enable

When this bit and INT2IF are set to 1, a HOLD mode release signal and an interrupt request to vector address 0013H are generated.

### 3.2.3.8 Input signal select register (ISL)

1) The input signal select register is an 8-bit register that controls the timer 0 input, noise filter time constant, buzzer output, and base timer clock.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE5F	0000 0000	R/W	ISL	ST0HCP	ST0LCP	BTIMC1	BTIMC0	BUZON	NFSEL	NFON	ST0IN

### ST0HCP (bit 7): Timer 0H capture signal input port select

This bit selects the timer 0H capture signal input port.

When set to 1, a timer 0H capture signal is generated when an input that satisfies the INT1 interrupt detection conditions is supplied to P17. If the INT1 interrupt detection mode is set to level detection, capture signals are generated at an interval of 1 Tcyc as long as the detection level is present at P17.

When this bit is set to 0, a timer 0H capture signal is generated when an input that satisfies the INT3 interrupt detection conditions is supplied to P15.

### STOLCP (bit 6): Timer 0L capture signal input port select

This bit selects the timer 0L capture signal input port.

When this bit is set to 1, a timer 0L capture signal is generated when an input that satisfies the INT0 interrupt detection conditions is supplied to P70. If the INT0 interrupt detection mode is set to level detection, capture signals are generated at an interval of 1 Tcyc as long as the detection level is present at P70.

When this bit is set to 0, a timer 0L capture signal is generated when an input that satisfies the INT2 interrupt detection conditions is supplied to P16.

### BTIMC1 (bit 5): Base timer clock select

### BTIMC0 (bit 4): Base timer clock select

BTIMC1	BTIMC0	Base Timer Input Clock
0	0	Subclock
0	1	Cycle clock
1	0	Internal low-speed RC
1	1	Timer/counter 0 prescaler output

### BUZON (bit 3): Buzzer output/timer 1 PWMH output select

When P17FCR (P1FCR, bit7) is set to 1, this bit selects the data (buzzer output or timer 1 PWMH) to be sent to port P17.

When this bit is set to 1, the timer 1 PWMH output is always set high and port P17 is provided, as buzzer output, with the signal that is generated by dividing the base timer clock.

# LC870G00 Chapter 3

When this bit is set to 0, the buzzer output is always set high, in which case port 7 is provided with the timer 1 PWMH output data.

# NFSEL (bit 2): Noise filter time constant select

# NFON (bit 1): Noise filter time constant select

A noise filter is connected to INT3.

INT0, INT1, and INT4 do not have a noise filter.

NFSEL	NFON	Noise Filter Time Constant
0	0	1 Teye
0	1	128 Teye
1	0	1 Teye
1	1	32Тсус

# ST0IN (bit 0): Timer 0 counter clock input port select

This bit selects the timer 0 counter clock signal input port.

When set to 1, a timer 0 count clock is generated when an input that satisfies the INT3 interrupt detection conditions is supplied to P15.

When this bit is set to 0, a timer 0 count clock is generated when an input that satisfies the INT2 interrupt detection conditions is supplied to P16.

Note: If timer 0L capture signal input or timer 0H capture signal input is specified to both P70 and P14 at the same time as an INT4, any signals from port 7 and port 1 are ignored.

# 3.2.4 Options

The following two user options are available for P10 to P17.

1) CMOS output (with a programmable pull-up resistor)

2) N-channel open drain output (with a programmable pull-up resistor)

# 3.2.5 HALT and HOLD Mode Operation

When in the HALT or HOLD mode, port 1 retains the state that is established when the HALT or HOLD mode is entered.

# 3.3 Port 7

# 3.3.1 Overview

Port 7 is a 1-bit I/O port equipped with a programmable pull-up resistor. It is made up of a data control latch and a control circuit. The input/output direction of port data can be controlled on a bit basis.

Port 7 can also serve as an input port for external interrupts. It can also be used as an input port for the capture signal input and HOLD mode release signal input.

There is no user option for this port.

#### 3.3.2 Functions

- 1) Input/output port (1 bit: P70)
  - The bit 0 of the port 7 control register (P7: FE5C) is used to control the port output data and the bit 4 to control the I/O direction of port data.
  - P70 is of the N-channel open drain output type.
  - Each port bit is provided with a programmable pull-up resistor.
- 2) Interrupt input pin function
  - P70 is assigned to INT0, and used to detect a low or high level, or a low or high edge and set the interrupt flag.
- 3) Timer 0L capture input function

A timer 0L capture signal is generated each time a signal change such that the interrupt flag is set is supplied to the port selected from P70 and P16.

When a selected level of signal is input to P70 that is specified for level-triggered interrupts, a timer 0L capture signal is generated at 1 cycle interval. This continues while the input is present.

- 4) HOLD mode release function
  - When the interrupt flag and interrupt enable flag are set by INTO, a HOLD mode release signal is generated, releasing the HOLD mode. The CPU then enters the HALT mode (main oscillation by CR). When the interrupt is accepted, the CPU switches from the HALT mode to normal operating mode.
  - When a signal change such that the interrupt flag is set is input to P70 that is specified for level-triggered interrupt in the HOLD mode, the interrupt flag is set. In this case, the HOLD mode is released if the corresponding interrupt enable flag is set.
- 5) Multiplexed pins

Pin P70 also serves as the AD input channel pin AN9.

	Input	Output	Interrupt Input Signal Detection	Timer 0 Count Input	Capture Input	Hold Mode Release
P70	With	N-channel open	L level, H level,	_	Timer 0L	Enabled
	programmable	drain	L edge, H edge			
	pull-up					
	resistor					

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE5C	ннно ннно	R/W	P7	-	-	1	P70DDR	-	-	1	P70DT
FE5D	0000 0000	R/W	I01CR	INT1LH	INT1LV	INT1IF	INT1IE	INT0LH	INT0LV	INT0IF	INT0IE
FE5E	0000 0000	R/W	I23CR	INT3HEG	INT3LEG	INT3IF	INT3IE	INT2HEG	INT2LEG	INT2IF	INT2IE
FE5F	0000 0000	R/W	ISL	ST0HCP	ST0LCP	BTIMC1	BTIMC0	BUZON	NFSEL	NFON	ST0IN

# 3.3.3 Related Registers

### 3.3.3.1 Port 7 control register (P7)

- 1) The port 7 control register is a 2-bit register for controlling the I/O of port 7 data and pull-up resistors.
- 2) When this register is read with an instruction, data at pin P70 is read into bit 0. Bit 4 is loaded with bit 4 of register P7. If P7 (FE5C) is manipulated with an instruction NOT1, CLR1, SET1, DBZ, DBNZ, INC, or DEC, the contents of the register are referenced as bit 0 instead of the data at port pin.
- 3) Port 7 data can always be read regardless of the I/O state of the port.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE5C	ннно ннно	R/W	P7	-	-	-	P70DDR	-	-	-	P70DT

Regist	ter Data		Port P70 State	
P70	-		Output	Built-in Pull-up Resistor
0	0	Enabled	Open	OFF
1	0	Enabled	Built-in pull-up resistor	ON
0	1	Enabled	Low	OFF
1	1	Enabled	Open	ON

# (Bits 7 to 5): These bits do not exist. They are always read as "1."

# P70DDR (bit 4): P70 I/O control

A 1 or 0 in this bit controls the output (N-channel open drain) or input of pin P70.

# (Bit s3 to 1): These bits do not exist. They are always read as "1."

### P70 (bit 0): P70 data

The value of this bit is output from pin P70 when P70DDR is set to 1. Since this bit is of N-channel open drain output type, then is placed in the high-impedance state when P70 is set to 1.

A value of 1 or 0 in this bit turns on and off the internal pull-up resistor for pin P70.

# LC870G00 Chapter 3

# 3.3.3.2 External interrupt 0/1 control register (I01CR)

See "3.2.3.6 External interrupt 0/1 control register (I01CR)."

# 3.3.3.3 External interrupt 2/3 control register (I23CR)

See "3.2.3.7 External interrupt 2/3 control register (I23CR)."

# 3.3.3.4 Input signal select register (ISL)

See "3.2.3.8 Input signal select register (ISL)."

\* The input transistor for the port 7 pin is always on.

Consequently, current will flow into the input transistor when the voltage level at the input pin reaches an intermediate level.

# 3.3.4 Options

There is no user option for this port.

# 3.3.5 HALT and HOLD Mode Operation

The pull-up resistor to P70 is turned off.

# 3.4 Timer/Counter 0 (T0)

### 3.4.1 Overview

The timer/counter 0 (T0) incorporated in this series of microcontrollers is a 16-bit timer/counter that provides the following four functions:

- 1) Mode 0: Two channels of 8-bit programmable timers with a programmable prescaler (equipped with an 8-bit capture register)
- 2) Mode 1: 8-bit programmable timer with a programmable prescaler (equipped with an 8-bit capture register) + 8-bit programmable counter (equipped with an 8-bit capture register)
- 3) Mode 2: 16-bit programmable timer with a programmable prescaler (equipped with a 16-bit capture register)
- 4) Mode 3: 16-bit programmable counter (equipped with a 16-bit capture register)

### 3.4.2 Functions

- 1) Mode 0: Two-channels of 8-bit programmable timers with a programmable prescaler (equipped with an 8-bit capture register)
  - Two independent 8-bit programmable timers (T0L and T0H) run on the clock (with a period of 1 to 256 Tcyc) from an 8-bit programmable prescaler.
  - The contents of ToL are captured into the capture register ToCAL on an external input detection signal from P70/INT0/ToLCP, P16/INT2/ToIN, P13 and P14 timer 0L capture input pins.
  - The contents of T0H are captured into the capture register T0CAH on an external input detection signal from P17/INT1/T0HCP, P15/INT3/T0IN, P13 and P14 timer 0H capture input pins.

```
T0L period = (T0LR + 1) \times (T0PRR + 1) \times Tcyc

T0H period = (T0HR + 1) \times (T0PRR + 1) \times Tcyc

Tcyc = Period of cycle clock
```

- 2) Mode 1: 8-bit programmable timer with a programmable prescaler (equipped with an 8-bit capture register) + 8-bit programmable counter (equipped with an 8-bit capture register)
  - TOL serves as an 8-bit programmable counter that counts the number of external input detection signal from pins P16/INT2/TOIN and P15/INT3/TOIN.
  - T0H serves as an 8-bit programmable timer that runs on the clock (with a period of 1 to 256 Tcyc) from an 8-bit programmable prescaler.
  - The contents of ToL are captured into the capture register ToCAL on an external input detection signal from P70/INT0/ToLCP, P16/INT2/ToIN, P13 and P14 timer 0L capture input pins.
  - The contents of T0H are captured into the capture register T0CAH on an external input detection signal from P17/INT1/T0HCP, P15/INT3/T0IN, and P13 and P14 timer 0H capture input pins.

```
T0L period = (T0LR + 1)
T0H period = (T0HR + 1) \times (T0PRR + 1) \times Tcyc
```

- 3) Mode 2: 16-bit programmable timer with a programmable prescaler (equipped with a 16-bit capture register)
  - In this mode, timer/counter 0 serves as a 16-bit programmable timer that runs on the clock (with a period of 1 to 256 Tcyc) from an 8-bit programmable prescaler.
  - The contents of T0L and T0H are captured into the capture registers T0CAL and T0CAH at the same time on an external input detection signal from P17/INT1/T0HCP, P15/INT3/T0IN, and P13 and P14 timer 0H capture input pins.

T0 period = ([T0HR, T0LR] + 1) 
$$\times$$
 (T0PRR + 1)  $\times$  Tcyc  
16 bits

- 4) Mode 3: 16-bit programmable counter (equipped with a 16-bit capture register)
  - In this mode, timer/counter 0 serves as a 16-bit programmable counter that counts the number of external input detection signal from pins P16/INT2/T0IN and P15/INT3/T0IN.
  - The contents of T0L and T0H are captured into the capture registers T0CAL and T0CAH at
    the same time on an external input detection signal from P17/INT1/T0HCP, P15/INT3/T0IN,
    P13 and P14 timer 0H capture input pins.

$$T0 \text{ period} = [T0HR, T0LR] + 1$$

$$16 \text{ bits}$$

5) Interrupt generation

T0L or T0H interrupt requests are generated at the counter interval for timer/counter T0L or T0H if the interrupt request enable bit is set.

- 6) To control timer/counter 0 (T0), it is necessary to manipulate the following special function registers.
  - TOCNT, TOPRR, TOL, TOH, TOLR, TOHR
  - P1, P1DDR, P1FCR
  - P7, TSL, ISL, I01CR, I23CR
  - I45CR, I45SL

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE10	0000 0000	R/W	T0CNT	T0HRUN	T0LRUN	T0LONG	T0LEXT	ТОНСМР	T0HIE	T0LCMP	T0LIE
FE11	0000 0000	R/W	T0PRR	T0PRR7	T0PRR6	T0PRR5	T0PRR4	T0PRR3	T0PRR2	T0PRR1	T0PRR0
FE12	0000 0000	R	T0L	T0L7	T0L6	T0L5	T0L4	T0L3	T0L2	T0L1	T0L0
FE13	0000 0000	R	ТОН	T0H7	T0H6	T0H5	T0H4	Т0Н3	T0H2	T0H1	ТОНО
FE14	0000 0000	R/W	T0LR	T0LR7	T0LR6	T0LR5	T0LR4	T0LR3	T0LR2	T0LR1	T0LR0
FE15	0000 0000	R/W	T0HR	T0HR7	T0HR6	T0HR5	T0HR4	T0HR3	T0HR2	T0HR1	T0HR0
FE16	XXXX XXXX	R	T0CAL	T0CAL7	T0CAL6	T0CAL5	T0CAL4	T0CAL3	T0CAL2	T0CAL1	T0CAL0
FE17	XXXX XXXX	R	T0CAH	T0CAH7	Т0САН6	T0CAH5	T0CAH4	Т0САН3	T0CAH2	T0CAH1	T0CAH0

# 3.4.3 Circuit Configuration

### 3.4.3.1 Timer/counter 0 control register (T0CNT) (8-bit register)

1) This register controls the operation and interrupts of T0L and T0H.

# 3.4.3.2 Programmable prescaler match register (T0PRR) (8-bit register)

1) This register stores the match data for the programmable prescaler.

### 3.4.3.3 Programmable prescaler (8-bit counter)

- 1) Start/stop: This register runs in modes other than the HOLD mode.
- 2) Count clock: Cycle clock (period = 1 Tcyc).
- 3) Match signal: A match signal is generated when the count value matches the value of register

TOPRR (period: 1 to 256 Tcyc)

4) Reset: The counter starts counting from 0 when a match signal occurs or when data is

written into TOPRR.

# 3.4.3.4 Timer/counter 0 low byte (T0L) (8-bit counter)

- 1) Start/stop: This counter is started and stopped by the 0/1 value of T0LRUN (timer 0 control register, bit 6).
- 2) Count clock: Either prescaler's match signal or external signal must be selected through the 0/1 value of TOLEXT (timer 0 control register, bit 4).
- 3) Match signal: A match signal is generated when the count value matches the value of the match buffer register (16 bits of data need to match in the 16-bit mode).
- 4) Reset: This counter is reset when it stops operation or a match signal is generated.

### 3.4.3.5 Timer/counter 0 high byte (T0H) (8-bit counter)

- 1) Start/stop: This counter is started and stopped by the 0/1 value of T0HRUN (timer 0 control register, bit 7).
- 2) Count clock: Either prescaler's match signal or T0L match signal must be selected through the 0/1 value of T0LONG (timer 0 control register, bit 5).
- 3) Match signal: A match signal is generated when the count value matches the value of the match buffer register (16 bits of data need to match in the 16-bit mode).
- 4) Reset: This counter is reset when it stops operation or a match signal is generated.

# 3.4.3.6 Timer/counter 0 match data register low byte (T0LR) (8-bit register with a match buffer register)

- 1) This register is used to store the match data for T0L. It has an 8-bit match buffer register. A match signal is generated when the value of this match buffer register coincides with the lower-order byte of timer/counter 0 (16 bits of data need to match in the 16-bit mode).
- 2) The match buffer register is updated as follows:
  - The match register matches T0LR when it is inactive (T0LRUN = 0).
  - When the match register is running (T0LRUN = 1), it is loaded with the contents of T0LR when a match signal is generated.

# 3.4.3.7 Timer/counter 0 match data register high byte (T0HR) (8-bit register with a match buffer register)

- 1) This register is used to store the match data for T0H. It has an 8-bit match buffer register. A match signal is generated when the value of this match buffer register coincides with the higher-order byte of timer/counter 0 (16 bits of data need to match in the 16-bit mode).
- 2) The match buffer register is updated as follows:
  - The match register matches T0HR when it is inactive (T0HRUN = 0).
  - When the match register is running (T0HRUN = 1), it is loaded with the contents of T0HR when a match signal is generated.

### 3.4.3.8 Timer/counter 0 capture register low byte (T0CAL) (8-bit register)

1) Capture clock:

External input detection signal from the P70/INT0/T0LCP, P16/INT2/T0IN, P13 and P14 timer 0L capture input pins when T0LONG (timer 0 control register, bit 5) is set to 0.

External input detection signal from the P17/INT1/T0HCP, P15/INT3/T0IN, P13 and P14 timer 0H capture input pins when T0LONG (timer 0 control register, bit 5) is set to 1.

2) Capture data: Contents of timer/counter 0 low byte (T0L).

### 3.4.3.9 Timer/counter 0 capture register high byte (T0CAH) (8-bit register)

1) Capture clock:

External input detection signals from the P17/INT1/T0HCP, P15/INT3/T0IN, P13 and P14 timer 0H capture input pins

2) Capture data: Contents of timer/counter 0 high byte (T0H)

Table 3.4.1 Timer 0 (T0H, T0L) Count Clocks

Mode	T0LONG	T0LEXT	T0H Count Clock	T0L Count Clock	[T0H, T0L] Count Clock
0	0	0	TOPRR match signal	TOPRR match signal	_
1	0	1	TOPRR match signal	External signal	_
2	1	0	_	_	T0PRR match signal
3	1	1	_	_	External signal

### LC870G00 Chapter 3

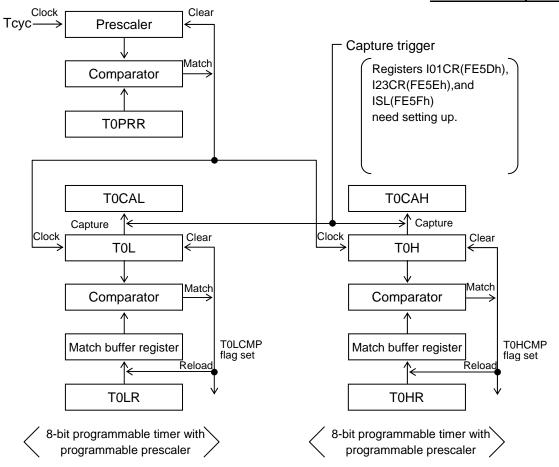


Figure 3.4.1 Mode 0 (T0LONG = 0, T0LEXT = 0) Block Diagram

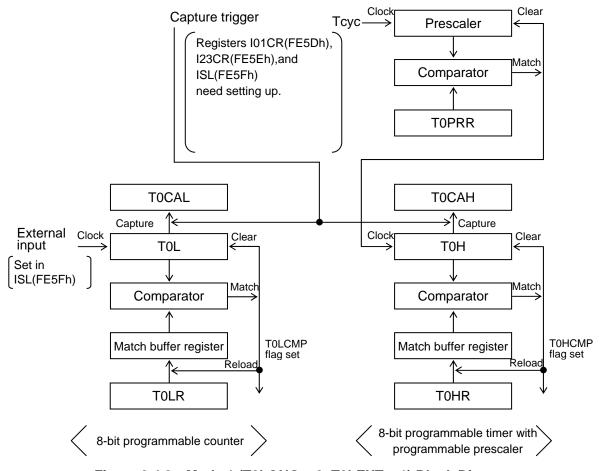


Figure 3.4.2 Mode 1 (T0LONG = 0, T0LEXT = 1) Block Diagram

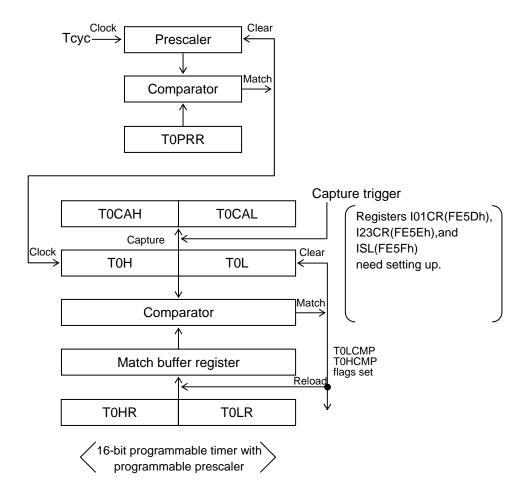


Figure 3.4.3 Mode 2 (T0LONG = 1, T0LEXT = 0) Block Diagram

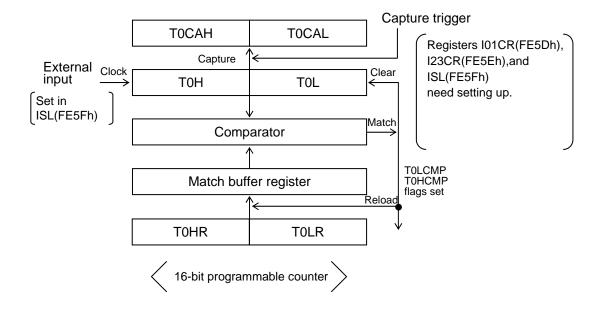


Figure 3.4.4 Mode 3 (T0LONG = 1, T0LEXT = 1) Block Diagram

# 3.4.4 Related Registers

### 3.4.4.1 Timer/counter 0 control register (T0CNT)

1) This register is an 8-bit register that controls the operation and interrupts of T0L and T0H.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE10	0000 0000	R/W	T0CNT	T0HRUN	T0LRUN	T0LONG	T0LEXT	ТОНСМР	T0HIE	T0LCMP	T0LIE

# T0HRUN (bit 7): T0H count control

When this bit is set to 0, timer/counter 0 high byte (T0H) stops on a count value of 0. The match buffer register of T0H has the same value as T0HR.

When this bit is set to 1, timer/counter 0 high byte (T0H) performs the required counting operation. The match buffer register of T0H is loaded with the contents of T0HR when a match signal is generated.

# T0LRUN (bit 6): T0L count control

When this bit is set to 0, timer/counter 0 low byte (T0L) stops on a count value of 0. The match buffer register of T0L has the same value as T0LR.

When this bit is set to 1, timer/counter 0 low byte (T0L) performs the required counting operation. The match buffer register of T0L is loaded with the contents of T0LR when a match signal is generated.

# T0LONG (bit 5): Timer/counter 0 bit length select

When this bit is set to 0, timer/counter 0's higher- and lower-order bytes serve as independent 8-bit timers/counters.

When this bit is set to 1, timer/counter 0 functions as a 16-bit timer/counter. A match signal is generated when the count value of the 16-bit counter comprising T0H and T0L matches the contents of the match buffer register of T0H and T0L.

### T0LEXT (bit 4): T0L input clock select

When this bit is set to 0, the count clock for TOL is the match signal for the prescaler.

When this bit is set to 1, the count clock for T0L is an external input signal.

### T0HCMP (bit 3): T0H match flag

This bit is set when the value of TOH matches the value of the match buffer register for TOH while TOH is running (TOHRUN = 1) and a match signal is generated. Its state does not change if no match signal is generated. Consequently, this flag must be cleared with an instruction.

In the 16-bit mode (T0LONG = 1), a match needs to occur in all 16 bits of data for a match signal to generate.

# T0HIE (bit 2): T0H interrupt request enable control

When this bit and T0HCMP are set to 1, an interrupt request to vector address 0023H is generated.

# T0LCMP (bit 1): T0L match flag

This bit is set when the value of T0L matches the value of the match buffer register for T0L while T0L is running (T0LRUN = 1) and a match signal is generated. Its state does not change if no match signal is generated. Consequently, this flag must be cleared with an instruction.

In the 16-bit mode (T0LONG = 1), a match needs to occur in all 16 bits of data for a match signal to generate.

### T0LIE (bit 0): T0L interrupt request enable control

When this bit and TOLCMP are set to 1, an interrupt request to vector address 0013H is generated.

#### Notes:

- TOHCMP and TOLCMP must be cleared to 0 with an instruction.
- When the 16-bit mode is to be used, TOLRUN and TOHRUN must be set to the same value to control operation.
- TOLCMP and TOHCMP are set at the same time in the 16-bit mode.

### 3.4.4.2 Timer 0 programmable prescaler match register (T0PRR)

- 1) Timer 0 programmable prescaler match register is an 8-bit register that is used to define the clock period (Tpr) of timer/counter 0.
- 2) The count value of the prescaler starts at 0 when TOPRR is loaded with data.
- 3)  $Tpr = (T0PRR + 1) \times Tcyc$  Tcyc = Period of cycle clock

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE11	0000 0000	R/W	T0PRR	T0PRR7	T0PRR6	T0PRR5	T0PRR4	T0PRR3	T0PRR2	T0PRR1	T0PRR0

### 3.4.4.3 Timer/counter 0 low byte (T0L)

1) This is a read-only 8-bit timer/counter. It counts the number of match signals from the prescaler or external signals.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE12	0000 0000	R	T0L	T0L7	T0L6	T0L5	T0L4	T0L3	T0L2	T0L1	T0L0

### 3.4.4.4 Timer/counter 0 high byte (T0H)

1) This is a read-only 8-bit timer/counter. It counts the number of match signals from the prescaler or overflows occurring TOL.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE13	0000 0000	R	ТОН	T0H7	T0H6	T0H5	T0H4	T0H3	T0H2	T0H1	Т0Н0

### 3.4.4.5 Timer/counter 0 match data register low byte (T0LR)

- 1) This register is used to store the match data for T0L. It has an 8-bit match buffer register. A match signal is generated when the value of this match buffer register coincides with the lower-order byte of timer/counter 0 (16 bits of data need match in the 16-bit mode).
- 2) The match buffer register is updated as follows:

The match register matches T0LR when it is inactive (T0LRUN = 0).

When the match register is running (T0LRUN = 1), it is loaded with the contents of T0LR when a match signal is generated.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE14	0000 0000	R/W	T0LR	T0LR7	T0LR6	T0LR5	T0LR4	T0LR3	T0LR2	T0LR1	T0LR0

# 3.4.4.6 Timer/counter 0 match data register high byte (T0HR)

- 1) This register is used to store the match data for T0H. It has an 8-bit match buffer register. A match signal is generated when the value of this match buffer register coincides with the higher-order byte of timer/counter 0 (16 bits of data need match in the 16-bit mode)
- 2) The match buffer register is updated as follows:

The match register matches T0HR when it is inactive (T0HRUN = 0).

When the match register is running (T0HRUN = 1), it is loaded with the contents of T0HR when a match signal is generated.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE15	0000 0000	R/W	T0HR	T0HR7	T0HR6	T0HR5	T0HR4	T0HR3	T0HR2	T0HR1	T0HR0

# 3.4.4.7 Timer/counter 0 capture register low byte (T0CAL)

1) This register is a read-only 8-bit register used to capture the contents of timer/counter 0 low byte (T0L) on an external input detection signal.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE16	XXXX XXXX	R	T0CAL	T0CAL7	T0CAL6	T0CAL5	T0CAL4	T0CAL3	T0CAL2	T0CAL1	T0CAL0

# 3.4.4.8 Timer/counter 0 capture register high byte (T0CAH)

1) This register is a read-only 8-bit register used to capture the contents of timer/counter 0 high byte (T0H) on an external input detection signal.

	Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
Ī	FE17	XXXX XXXX	R	T0CAH	T0CAH7	Т0САН6	T0CAH5	T0CAH4	Т0САН3	T0CAH2	T0CAH1	Т0САН0

# 3.5 Timer/Counter 1 (T1)

### 3.5.1 Overview

The timer/counter 1 (T1) incorporated in this series of microcontrollers is a 16-bit timer/counter with a prescaler that provides the following four functions:

- 1) Mode 0: 8-bit programmable timer with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle output) + 8-bit programmable timer/counter (with toggle output)
- 2) Mode 1: Two channels of 8-bit PWM with an 8-bit prescaler
- 3) Mode 2: 16-bit programmable timer/counter with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle output) (the lower-order 8 bits may be used as a timer/counter with toggle output.)
- 4) Mode 3: 16-bit programmable timer with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle output) (the lower-order 8 bits may be used as a PWM.)

# 3.5.2 Functions

- 1) Mode 0: 8-bit programmable timer with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle output) + 8-bit programmable timer/counter (with toggle output)
  - T1L functions as an 8-bit programmable timer/counter that counts the number of signals obtained by dividing the cycle clock by 2 or external events while T1H functions as an 8-bit programmable timer that counts the number of signals obtained by dividing the cycle clock by 2.
  - Two independent 8-bit programmable timers (T1L and T1H) run on a clock that is obtained by dividing the cycle clock by 2.
  - T1PWML and T1PWMH generate a signal that toggles at the interval of T1L and T1H period, respectively. (Note 1)

```
T1L \ period = \ (T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC \ count) \times 2Tcyc \ or (T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC \ count) \ events \ detected T1PWML \ period = T1L \ period \times 2 T1H \ period = (T1HR+1) \times (T1HPRC \ count) \times 2Tcyc T1PWMH \ period = T1H \ period \times 2
```

- 2) Mode 1: Two channels of 8-bit PWM with an 8-bit prescaler
  - Two independent 8-bit PWMs (T1PWML and T1PWMH) run on the cycle clock.

```
T1PWML period = 256 \times (T1LPRC \text{ count}) \times Tcyc
T1PWML low period = (T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC \text{ count}) \times Tcyc
T1PWMH period = 256 \times (T1HPRC \text{ count}) \times Tcyc
T1PWMH low period = (T1HR+1) \times (T1HPRC \text{ count}) \times Tcyc
```

- 3) Mode 2: 16-bit programmable timer/counter with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle output) (the lower-order 8 bits may be used as a timer/counter with toggle output.)
  - A 16-bit programmable timer/counter runs that counts the number of signals whose frequency is equal to that of the cycle clock divided by 2 or the number of external events. Since interrupts can occur from the lower-order 8-bit timer (T1L) at the interval of T1L period, the lower-order 8 bits of this 16-bit programmable timer/counter can be used as the reference timer.
  - T1PWML and T1PWMH generate a signal that toggles at the interval of T1L and T1 periods, respectively. (Note 1)

```
T1L \ period = \ (T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC \ count) \times 2Tcyc \ or (T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC \ count) \ events \ detected T1PWML \ period = T1L \ period \times 2 T1 \ period = (T1HR+1) \times (T1HPRC \ count) \times T1L \ period \ or (T1HR+1) \times (T1HPRC \ count) \times (T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC \ count) \ events \ detected T1PWMH \ period = T1 \ period \times 2
```

- 4) Mode 3: 16-bit programmable timer with an 8-bit prescaler (with toggle output) (the lower-order 8 bits may be used as a PWM.)
  - A 16-bit programmable timer runs on the cycle clock.
  - The lower-order 8 bits run as a PWM (T1PWML) having a period of 256 Tcyc.
  - T1PWMH generates a signal that toggles at the interval of T1 period. (Note 1)

```
T1PWML period = 256 \times (T1LPRC \ count) \times Tcyc
T1PWML low period = (T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC \ count) \times Tcyc
T1 period = (T1HR+1) \times (T1HPRC \ count) \times T1PWML period
T1PWMH period = T1 period \times 2
```

5) Interrupt generation

T1L or T1H interrupt request is generated at the counter period of the T1L or T1H timer if the interrupt request enable bit is set.

- 6) To control timer 1 (T1), it is necessary to manipulate the following special function registers:
  - T1CNT, T1L, T1H, T1LR, T1HR, T1PRR,
  - P1, P1DDR, P1FCR
  - I45CR, I45SL

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE18	0000 0000	R/W	T1CNT	T1HRUN	T1LRUN	T1LONG	T1PWM	T1HCMP	T1HIE	T1LCMP	T1LIE
FE1A	0000 0000	R	T1L	T1L7	T1L6	T1L5	T1L4	T1L3	T1L2	T1L1	T1L0
FE1B	0000 0000	R	T1H	T1H7	T1H6	T1H5	T1H4	T1H3	T1H2	T1H1	T1H0
FE1C	0000 0000	R/W	T1LR	T1LR7	T1LR6	T1LR5	T1LR4	T1LR3	T1LR2	T1LR1	T1LR0
FE1D	0000 0000	R/W	T1HR	T1HR7	T1HR6	T1HR5	T1HR4	T1HR3	T1HR2	T1HR1	T1HR0
FE19	0000 0000	R/W	T1PRR	T1HPRE	T1HPRC2	T1HPRC1	T1HPRC0	T1LPRE	T1LPRC2	T1LPRC1	T1LPRC0

Note 1: The output of the T1PWML is fixed at the high level if the T1L is stopped. If the T1L is running, the output of the T1PWML is fixed at the low level when T1LR=FFH. The output of T1PWMH is fixed at the high level if the T1H is stopped. If the T1H is running, the output of the T1PWMH is fixed at the low level when T1HR=FFH.

# 3.5.3 Circuit Configuration

### 3.5.3.1 Timer 1 control register (T1CNT) (8-bit register)

1) The timer 1 control register controls the operation and interrupts of the T1L and T1H.

# 3.5.3.2 Timer 1 prescaler control register (T1PRR) (8-bit counter)

1) This register sets the clocks for T1L and T1H.

# 3.5.3.3 Timer 1 prescaler low byte (8-bit counter)

1) Start/stop: The start/stop of timer 1 prescaler low byte is controlled by the 0/1 value of T1LRUN (timer 1 control register, bit 6).

2) Count clock: Varies with the operating mode.

Mode	T1LONG	T1PWM	T1L Prescaler Count Clock
0	0	0	2 Tcyc/events (Note 1)
1	0	1	1 Tcyc (Note 2)
2	1	0	2 Tcyc/events (Note 1)
3	1	1	1 Tcyc (Note 2)

Note 1: T1L serves as an event counter when INT4 is specified as the timer 1 count clock input in the external interrupt 4/5 pin select register (I45SL). It serves as a timer that runs using 2Tcyc as its count clock if INT4 is not specified as the timer 1 count clock input.

Note 2: T1L will not run normally if INT4 is specified as the timer 1 count clock input when T1PWM=1. When T1PWM=1, do not specify INT4 as the timer 1 count clock input.

3) Prescaler count: Determined by the T1PRR value.

The count clock for T1L is generated at the intervals determined by the prescaler count.

T1LPRE	T1LPRC2	T1LPRC1	T1LPRC0	T1L Prescaler Count
0	-	-	-	1
1	0	0	0	2
1	0	0	1	4
1	0	1	0	8
1	0	1	1	16
1	1	0	0	32
1	1	0	1	64
1	1	1	0	128
1	1	1	1	256

4) Reset: When the timer 1 stops operation or a T1L reset signal is generated.

# 3.5.3.4 Timer 1 prescaler high byte (8-bit counter)

- 1) Start/stop: The start/stop of timer 1 prescaler high byte is controlled by the 0/1 value of T1HRUN (timer 1 control register, bit 7).
- 2) Count clock: Varies with the operating mode.

Mode	T1LONG	T1PWM	T1H Prescaler Count Clock
0	0	0	2 Teye
1	0	1	1 Tcyc
2	1	0 T1L match signal	
3	1	1	256 × (T1LPRC count) × Tcyc

3) Prescaler count: Determined by the T1PRR value.

The count clock for T1H is generated at the intervals determined by the prescaler count.

T1HPRE	T1HPRC2	T1HPRC1	T1HPRC0	T1H Prescaler Count
0	-	-	-	1
1	0	0	0	2
1	0	0	1	4
1	0	1	0	8
1	0	1	1	16
1	1	0	0	32
1	1	0	1	64
1	1	1	0	128
1	1	1	1	256

4) Reset: When the timer 1 stops operation or a T1H reset signal is generated.

### 3.5.3.5 Timer 1 low byte (T1L) (8-bit counter)

1) Start/stop: The start/stop of the timer 1 low byte is controlled by the 0/1 value of T1LRUN (timer 1 control register, bit 6).

2) Count clock: T1L prescaler output clock

3) Match signal: A match signal is generated when the count value matches the value of the match

buffer register.

4) Reset: The timer 1 low byte is reset when it stops operation or a match signal occurs on the

mode 0, or 2 condition.

# 3.5.3.6 Timer 1 high byte (T1H) (8-bit counter)

1) Start/stop: The start/stop of the timer 1 high byte is controlled by the 0/1 value of T1HRUN (timer 1 control register, bit 7).

2) Count clock: T1H prescaler output clock

3) Match signal: A match signal is generated when the count value matches the value of the match

buffer register.

4) Reset: The timer 1 high byte is reset when it stops operation or a match signal occurs on the

mode 0, 2, or 3 condition.

### 3.5.3.7 Timer 1 match data register low byte (T1LR) (8-bit register with a match buffer register)

- 1) This register is used to store the match data for T1L. It has an 8-bit match buffer register. A match signal is generated when the value of this match buffer register coincides with that of timer 1 low byte (T1L).
- 2) The match buffer register is updated as follows:

T1LR and the match register has the same value when in inactive state (T1LRUN=0). If active (T1LRUN=1), the match buffer register is loaded with the contents of T1LR when the value of T1L reaches 0.

### 3.5.3.8 Timer 1 match data register high byte (T1HR) (8-bit register with a match buffer register)

- 1) This register is used to store the match data for T1H. It has an 8-bit match buffer register. A match signal is generated when the value of this match buffer register coincides with that of timer 1 high byte (T1H).
- 2) The match buffer register is updated as follows:

T1HR and the match register have the same value when in inactive state (T1HRUN=0). If active (T1HRUN=1), the match buffer register is loaded with the contents of T1HR when the value of T1H reaches 0.

### 3.5.3.9 Timer 1 low byte output (T1PWML)

- 1) The T1PWML output is fixed at the high level when T1L is inactive. If T1L is active, the T1PWML output is fixed at the low level when T1LR=FFH.
- 2) Timer 1 low byte output is a toggle output whose state changes on a T1L match signal when T1PWM (timer 1 control register, bit 4) is set to 0.
- 3) When T1PWM (timer 1 control register, bit 4) is set to 1, this PWM output is cleared on an T1L overflow and set on a T1L match signal.

### 3.5.3.10 Timer 1 high byte output (T1PWMH)

- 1) The T1PWMH output is fixed at the high level when T1H is inactive. If T1H is active, the T1PWMH output is fixed at the low level when T1HR=FFH.
- 2) The timer 1 high byte output is a toggle output whose state changes on a T1H match signal when T1PWM=0 or T1LONG=1.
- 3) When T1PWM=1 and T1LONG=0, this PWM output is cleared on a T1H overflow and set on a T1H match signal.

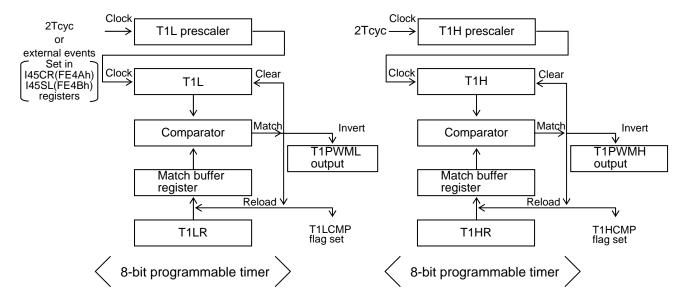


Figure 3.5.1 Mode 0 (T1LONG = 0, T1PWM = 0) Block Diagram

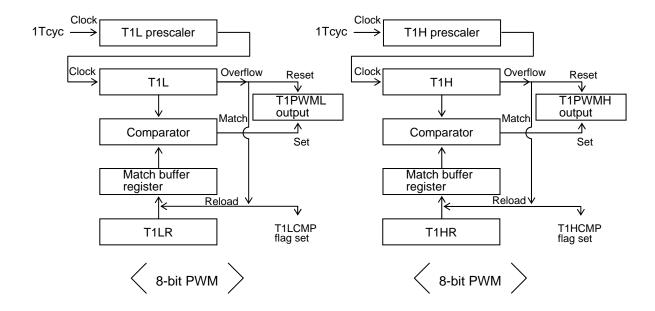


Figure 3.5.2 Mode 1 (T1LONG = 0, T1PWM = 1) Block Diagram

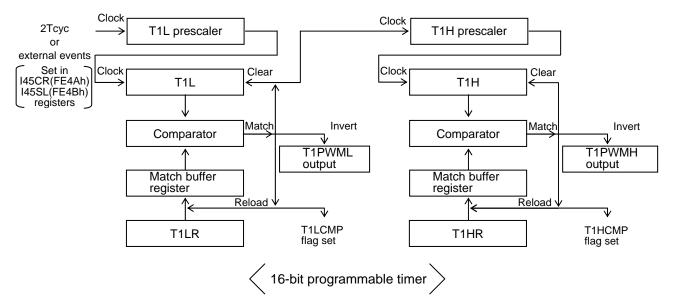


Figure 3.5.3 Mode 2 (T1LONG = 1, T1PWM = 0) Block Diagram

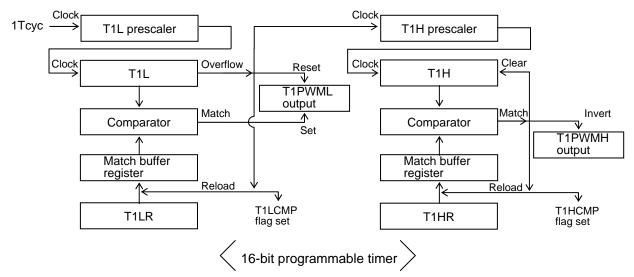


Figure 3.5.4 Mode 3 (T1LONG = 1, T1PWM = 1) Block Diagram

# 3.5.4 Related Registers

# 3.5.4.1 Timer 1 control register (T1CNT)

 Timer 1 control register is an 8-bit register that controls the operation and interrupts of T1L and T1H.

Į	Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
Ī	FE18	0000 0000	R/W	T1CNT	T1HRUN	T1LRUN	T1LONG	T1PWM	T1HCMP	T1HIE	T1LCMP	T1LIE

# T1HRUN (bit 7): T1H count control

When this bit is set to 0, timer 1 high byte (T1H) stops on a count value of 0. The match buffer register of T1H has the same value as T1HR.

When this bit is set to 1, timer 1 high byte (T1H) performs the required counting operation.

# T1LRUN (bit 6): T1L count control

When this bit is set to 0, timer 1 low byte (T1L) stops on a count value of 0. The match buffer register of T1L has the same value as T1LR.

When this bit is set to 1, timer 1 low byte (T1L) performs the required counting operation.

### T1LONG (bit 5): Timer 1 bit length select

When this bit is set to 0, timer 1's higher- and lower-order bytes serve as independent 8-bit timers.

When this bit is set to 1, timer 1 serves as a 16-bit timer since the timer 1 high byte (T1H) counts up at the interval of the timer 1 low byte (T1L).

Independent match signals are generated from T1H and T1L when their count value matches the contents of the corresponding match buffer register, regardless of the value of this bit.

### T1PWM (bit 4): T1 output mode select

This bit and T1LONG (bit 5) determine the output mode of T1 (T1PWMH and T1PWML) as summarized in Table 3.7.1.

Table 3.7.1 Timer 1 Output (T1PWMH, T1PWML)

Mode	T1LONG	T1PWM		T1PWMH T1PWML					
0	0	0	Toggle output	Period: $(T1HR+1) \times (T1HPRC count) \times 4 \times Tcyc$	Toggle output	Period: (T1LR+1) × (T1LPRC count) × 4 × Tcyc			
		v			or	Period: 2(T1LR+1) × (T1LPRC count) × events			
1	0	1	PWM output	Period: $256 \times (T1HPRC count) \times Tcyc$	PWM output	Period: 256 × (T1LPRC count) × Tcyc			
2	1	0	Toggle output	Period: (T1HR+1) × (T1HPRC count) × (T1PWML period)	Toggle output	Period: $(T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC count) \times 4 \times Tcyc$			
2	1	0	or	Period: $2(T1HR+1) \times (T1HPRC \text{ count}) \times (T1LR+1) \times (T1LPRC \text{ count}) \times \text{ events}$	or	Period: 2(T1LR+1) × (T1LPRC count) × events			
3	1	1	Toggle output	Period: $(T1HR+1) \times (T1HPRC \text{ count}) \times (T1PWML \text{ period}) \times 2$	PWM output	Period: 256 × (T1LPRC count) × Tcyc			

### T1HCMP (bit 3): T1H match flag

This flag is set if T1H reaches 0 when T1H is active (T1HRUN=1).

This flag must be cleared with an instruction.

# T1HIE (bit 2): T1H interrupt request enable control

An interrupt request is generated to vector address 002BH when this bit and T1HCMP are set to 1.

# T1LCMP (bit 1): T1L match flag

This flag is set if T1L reaches 0 when T1L is active (T1LRUN=1).

This flag must be cleared with an instruction.

### T1LIE (bit 0): T1L interrupt request enable control

An interrupt request is generated to vector address 002BH when this bit and T1LCMP are set to 1.

Note: T1HCMP and T1LCMP must be cleared to 0 with an instruction.

# 3.5.4.2 Timer 1 prescaler control register (T1PRR)

1) This register sets up the count values for the timer 1 prescaler.

2) When the register value is changed while the timer is running, the change is reflected in the prescaler operation at the same timing when the match buffer register for the timer (T1L, T1H) is updated.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE19	0000 0000	R/W	T1PRR	T1HPRE	T1HPRC2	T1HPRC1	T1HPRC0	T1LPRE	T1LPRC2	T1LPRC1	T1LPRC0

T1HPRE (bit 7): Controls the timer 1 prescaler high byte.

T1HPRC2 (bit 6): Controls the timer 1 prescaler high byte.

T1HPRC1 (bit 5): Controls the timer 1 prescaler high byte.

T1HPRC0 (bit 4): Controls the timer 1 prescaler high byte.

T1HPRE	T1HPRC2	T1HPRC1	T1HPRC0	T1H Prescaler Count
0	-	-	-	1
1	0	0	0	2
1	0	0	1	4
1	0	1	0	8
1	0	1	1	16
1	1	0	0	32
1	1	0	1	64
1	1	1	0	128
1	1	1	1	256

T1LPRC (bit 3): Controls the timer 1 prescaler low byte. T1LPRC2 (bit 2): Controls the timer 1 prescaler low byte. T1LPRC1 (bit 1): Controls the timer 1 prescaler low byte. T1LPRC0 (bit 0): Controls the timer 1 prescaler low byte.

T1LPRE	T1LPRC2	T1LPRC1	T1LPRC0	T1L Prescaler Count
0	-	-	-	1
1	0	0	0	2
1	0	0	1	4
1	0	1	0	8
1	0	1	1	16
1	1	0	0	32
1	1	0	1	64
1	1	1	0	128
1	1	1	1	256

# 3.5.4.3 Timer 1 low byte (T1L)

1) This is a read-only 8-bit timer. It counts up on every T1L prescaler output clock.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE1A	0000 0000	R	T1L	T1L7	T1L6	T1L5	T1L4	T1L3	T1L2	T1L1	T1L0

### 3.5.4.4 Timer 1 high byte (T1H)

1) This is a read-only 8-bit timer. It counts up on every T1H prescaler output clock.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE1B	0000 0000	R	T1H	T1H7	T1H6	T1H5	T1H4	T1H3	T1H2	T1H1	T1H0

### 3.5.4.5 Timer 1 match data register low byte (T1LR)

- 1) This register is used to store the match data for T1L. It has an 8-bit match buffer register. A match signal is generated when the value of this match buffer register coincides with the value of timer 1 low byte.
- 2) Match buffer register is updated as follows:

T1LR and the match register has the same value when in inactive (T1LRUN=0). If active (T1LRUN=1), the match buffer register is loaded with the contents of T1LR when the value of T1L reaches 0.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE1C	0000 0000	R/W	T1LR	T1LR7	T1LR6	T1LR5	T1LR4	T1LR3	T1LR2	T1LR1	T1LR0

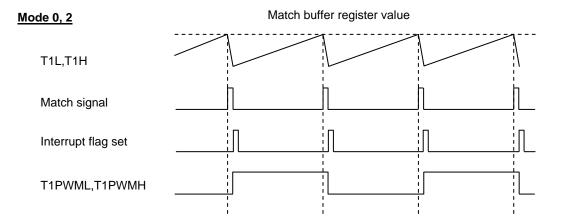
# 3.5.4.6 Timer 1 match data register high byte (T1HR)

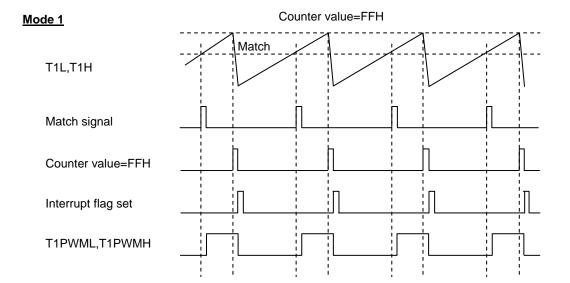
- 1) This register is used to store the match data for T1H. It has an 8-bit match buffer register. A match signal is generated when the value of this match buffer register coincides with the value of timer 1 high byte.
- 2) The match buffer register is updated as follows:

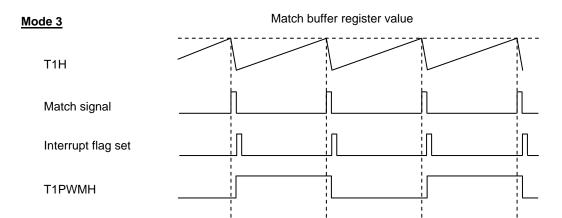
T1HR and the match register has the same value when in inactive (T1HRUN=0).

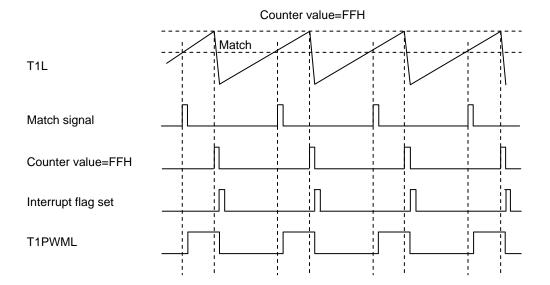
If active (T1HRUN=1), the match buffer register is loaded with the contents of T1HR when the value of T1H reaches 0.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE1D	0000 0000	R/W	T1HR	T1HR7	T1HR6	T1HR5	T1HR4	T1HR3	T1HR2	T1HR1	T1HR0









# 3.6 Base Timer (BT)

#### 3.6.1 Overview

The base timer (BT) incorporated in this series of microcontrollers is a 14-bit binary up-counter that provides the following five functions:

- 1) Clock timer
- 2) 14-bit binary up-counter (with a programmable prescaler)
- 3) High-speed mode (when used as a 6-bit base timer)
- 4) Buzzer output
- 5) X'tal Hold mode release

#### 3.6.2 Functions

1) Clock timer

The base timer can count clocks at 0.5 second intervals when a 32.768 kHz subclock is used as the count clock for the base timer.

One of the four clocks, namely, cycle clock, timer/counter 0 prescaler output, subclock, and low-speed RC oscillator clock must be loaded in the input signal select register (ISL) as the base timer count clock.

2) 14-bit binary up-counter (with a programmable prescaler)

A 14-bit binary up-counter can be constructed using an 8-bit binary up-counter which runs on the clock output from an 8-bit programmable prescaler and a 6-bit binary up-counter. These counters can be cleared under program control.

3) High speed mode (when used as a 6-bit base timer)

When the base timer is used as a 6-bit timer, it can clock at intervals of approximately 2 ms if the 32.768 kHz subclock is used as the count clock. The bit length of the base timer can be specified using the base timer control register (BTCR).

4) Buzzer output function

The signal generated by frequency-dividing the output of a programmable prescaler by 8 can be used as the buzzer signal. The control mode of the buzzer output can be specified using the input signal select register (ISL). The buzzer output/HPWM2 shares an output pin and can be transmitted via pin 17.

5) Interrupt generation

An interrupt request to vector address 001BH is generated if an interrupt request is generated by the base timer when the interrupt request enable bit is set. The base timer can generate two types of interrupt requests: "base timer interrupt 0" and "base timer interrupt 1."

6) X'tal HOLD mode operation and X'tal HOLD mode releasing

The base timer is enabled for operation in the X'tal HOLD mode by selecting the subclock or low-speed RC oscillator clock as the base timer count clock source and setting bit 2 of the power control register (PCON). The X'tal HOLD mode can be released by an interrupt from the base timer. This function allows the microcontroller to perform low-current intermittent operations.

- 7) To control the base timer, it is necessary to manipulate the following special function registers:
  - BTCR, BTPRR, ISL, P1, P1DDR, P1FCR, HPWM2AL

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE7F	0000 0000	R/W	BTCR	BTFST	BTON	BTC11	BTC10	BTIF1	BTIE1	BTIF0	BTIE0
FE3D	0000 0000	R/W	BTPRR	BTPRR7	BTPRR6	BTPRR5	BTPRR4	BTPRR3	BTPRR2	BTPRR1	BTPRR0
FE5F	0000 0000	R/W	ISL	ST0HCP	ST0LCP	BTIMC1	BTIMC0	BUZON	NFSEL	NFON	ST0IN

## 3.6.3 Circuit Configuration

#### 3.6.3.1 8-bit programmable prescaler

- 1) This prescaler is an 8-bit programmable prescaler that uses the signal selected by the input signal select register (ISL) as its clock source. A match signal is generated when a match occurs between its output value and the value of the programmable prescaler match register (BTPRR). This match signal serves as the clock input to the binary up-counter in the following stage.
- 2) This counter is reset under the conditions: BTON (BTCR, bit 6) is set to 0 (stop base timer operation), a match signal is generated, data is loaded into the BTPRR, and the microcontroller is in HOLD mode.

#### 3.6.3.2 8-bit binary up-counter

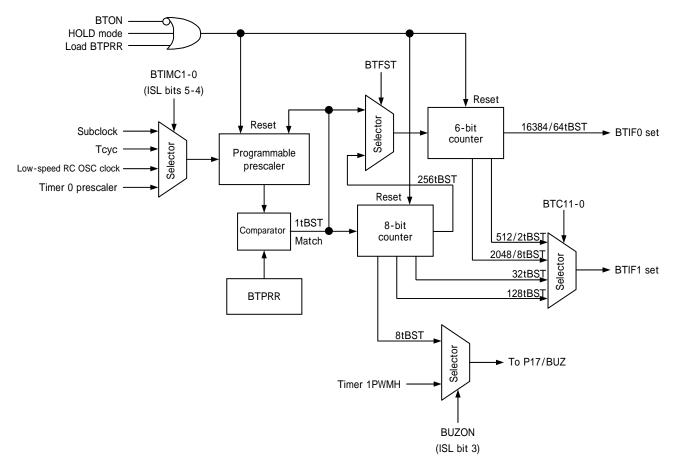
- 1) This counter is an 8-bit binary up-counter that uses, as its clock source, the match signal from the programmable prescaler. Its output is used as the buzzer output signal or used to set the base timer interrupt 1 flag. The overflow output of this counter serves as the clock input to the 6-bit binary up-counter.
- 2) This counter is reset under the conditions: BTON (BTCR, bit 6) is set to 0 (stop base timer operation), data is loaded into the BTPRR, and the microcontroller is in HOLD mode.

### 3.6.3.3 6-bit binary up-counter

- 1) This counter is a 6-bit binary up-counter that uses, as its clock source, the match signal from the programmable prescaler or overflow output from the 8-bit binary up-counter and generates set signals for base timer interrupts 0 and 1. The switching of the input clock is accomplished by the base timer control register (BTCR).
- 2) This counter is reset under the conditions: BTON (BTCR, bit 6) is set to 0 (stop base timer operation), data is loaded into the BTPRR, and the microcontroller is in HOLD mode.

#### 3.6.3.4 Base timer input clock source

1) The clock input to the base timer can be selected via the input signal select register (ISL) from 4 clock sources, i.e., "cycle clock," "timer/counter 0 prescaler output," "subclock," and "low-speed RC oscillator clock."



\* tBST: Base timer input clock period selected by (BTPRR set value + 1) x BTIMC1-0 (ISL bits 5-4)

Figure 3.6.1 Base Timer Block Diagram

# 3.6.4 Related Registers

#### 3.6.4.1 Base timer control register (BTCR)

1) The base timer control register is an 8-bit register that controls the operation of the base timer.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE7F	0000 0000	R/W	BTCR	BTFST	BTON	BTC11	BTC10	BTIF1	BTIE1	BTIF0	BTIE0

#### BTFST (bit 7): Base timer interrupt 0 period control

This bit is used to select the interval at which base timer interrupt 0 is to occur. If this bit is set to 1, the base timer interrupt 0 flag is set when an overflow occurs in the 6-bit counter. The interval at which overflows occur is 64tBST.

If this bit is set to 0, the base timer interrupt 0 flag is set when an overflow occurs in the 14-bit counter. The interval at which overflows occur is 16384tBST.

This bit must be set to 1 when the high speed mode is to be used.

tBST: Is the period of the input clock to the base timer that is selected by (BTPRR set value + 1)  $\times$  BTIMC1-0 (ISL, bits 5-4)

#### BTON (bit 6): Base timer operation control

When this bit is set to 0, the base timer stops operation when a count value of 0 is reached. When this bit is set to 1, the base timer continues operation.

# BTC11 (bit 5): Base timer interrupt 1 period control

## BTC10 (bit 4): Base timer interrupt 1 period control

BTFST	BTC11	BTC10	Base Timer Interrupt 0 Period	Base Timer Interrupt 1 Period
0	0	0	16384tBST	32tBST
0	0	1	16384tBST	128tBST
0	1	0	16384tBST	512tBST
0	1	1	16384tBST	2048tBST
1	0	0	64tBST	32tBST
1	0	1	64tBST	128tBST
1	1	0	64tBST	2tBST
1	1	1	64tBST	8tBST

## BTIF1 (bit 3): Base timer interrupt 1 flag

This flag is set at the interval equal to the base timer interrupt 1 period that is defined by BTFST, BTC11, and BTC10.

This flag must be cleared with an instruction.

## BTIE1 (bit 2): Base timer interrupt 1 request enable control

Setting this bit and BTIF1 to 1 generates "X'tal HOLD release reset signal" and "interrupt request to vector address 001BH" conditions.

#### BTIF0 (bit 1): Base timer interrupt 0 flag

This flag is set at the interval equal to the base timer interrupt 0 period that is defined by BTFST. This flag must be cleared with an instruction.

## BTIE0 (bit 0): Base timer interrupt 0 request enable control

Setting this bit and BTIF0 to 1 generates the "X'tal HOLD mode release signal" and "interrupt request to vector address 001BH.

#### Notes:

• The base timer interrupt period must be set up as the conditions for setting the flags (BTIF1 and BTIF0) at every base timer interrupt interval so that the cycle clock period (Tcyc) and the base timer interrupt period satisfy the following relationship.

## Cycle clock period (Tcyc) < Base timer interrupt period ÷ 2

Since program processing (e.g., interrupt processing routine) is involved in practice, the time that is required to execute such processing should be taken into consideration when setting up the optimum interrupt period.

- There are cases in which BTIF1 is set to 1 if an attempt is made to rewrite BTC11 or BTC10 while the base timer is running.
- Base timer oscillation may be suspended if the CPU is placed in the standby mode while the base timer is running when the main clock or subclock is selected as the base timer clock source. Although the oscillation is resumed when the standby mode is exited, erroneous counting will occur in the base timer because no oscillation stabilization time can be reserved in this case. It is therefore recommended that measures be taken to stop the base timer before placing the CPU in the standby mode

(See Section 4.2, "System Clock Generator Function," for the state of the oscillation circuits in the standby mode.)

• Counting errors can occur in the base timer if the base timer clock source is changed (resetting ISL, bits 5 and 4) while the base timer is running. Be sure to stop the base timer in advance when changing the base timer clock source.

# 3.6.4.2 Base timer programmable prescaler match register (BTPRR)

- 1) This register is an 8-bit register that sets the clock period (tBST) of 8-bit/6-bit binary up-counter.
- 2) When BTPRR is loaded with data, the prescaler and the binary up-counter are reset to the count value "0".
- 3)  $tBST = (BTPRR \text{ set value} + 1) \times Base \text{ timer input clock period}$

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE3D	0000 0000	R/W	BTPRR	BTPRR7	BTPRR6	BTPRR5	BTPRR4	BTPRR3	BTPRR2	BTPRR1	BTPRR0

#### 3.6.4.3 Input signal select register (ISL)

1) This register is an 8-bit register that controls the timer 0 input, noise filter sampling clock selection, buzzer output/timer 1 PWMH output selection, and base timer clock selection.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE5F	0000 0000	R/W	ISL	ST0HCP	ST0LCP	BTIMC1	BTIMC0	BUZON	NFSEL	NFON	ST0IN

## ST0HCP (bit 7): Timer 0H capture signal input port select

# ST0LCP (bit 6): Timer 0L capture signal input port select

These 2 bits have nothing to do with the control function on the base timer.

# BTIMC1 (bit 5): Base timer clock select BTIMC0 (bit 4): Base timer clock select

BTIMC1	BTIMC0	Base Timer Input Clock
0	0	Subclock
0	1	Cycle clock
1	0	Low-speed RC oscillation clock
1	1	Timer/counter 0 prescaler output

# **BUZON** (bit 3): Buzzer output enable

This bit enables data (buzzer output) to be transferred to port P17 when P17FCR (P1FCR, bit7) is set to 1 and P17H2ASL (HPWM2AL bit 1) is set to 0..

When this bit is set to 1, a signal that is obtained by dividing the base timer clock is sent to port P17 as buzzer output.

When this bit is set to "0," the buzzer output is held low, and it is sent to port P17.

# NFSEL (bit 2): Noise filter time constant select

NFON (bit 1): Noise filter time constant select

# ST0IN (bit 0): Timer 0 counter clock input port select

These 3 bits have nothing to do with the control function on the base timer.

# 3.7 Serial Interface 1 (SIO1)

#### 3.7.1 Overview

The serial interface SIO1 incorporated in this series of microcontrollers provides the following four functions:

- 1) Mode 0: Synchronous 8-bit serial I/O (2- or 3-wire system, clock rates of 2 to 512 Tcyc)
- 2) Mode 1: Asynchronous serial I/O (Half-duplex, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, baud rates of 8 to 2048 Tcyc)
- 3) Mode 2: Bus-master (start bit, 8 data bits, transfer clock of 2 to 512 Tcyc)
- 4) Mode 3: Bus-slave (start detection, 8 data bits, stop detection)

#### 3.7.2 Functions

- 1) Mode 0: Synchronous 8-bit serial I/O
  - Performs 2- or 3-wire synchronous serial communication. The clock may be an internal or external clock.
  - The clock rate of the internal clock is programmable within the range of 2 to 512 Tcyc.
- 2) Mode 1: Asynchronous serial (UART)
  - Performs half-duplex, 8 data bits/1 stop bit asynchronous serial communication.
  - The baudrate is programmable within the range of 8 to 2048 Tcyc.
- 3) Mode 2: Bus-master
  - SIO1 is used as a bus master controller.
  - The start conditions are automatically generated but the stop conditions must be generated by manipulating ports.
  - Clock synchronization is used. Since it is possible to verify the transfer-time bus data at the end of transfer, this mode can be combined with mode 3 to provide support for multi-master configurations.
  - The period of the output clock is programmable within the range of 2 to 512 Tcyc.
- 4) Mode 3: Bus-slave
  - SIO1 is used as a slave device of the bus.
  - Start/stop condition detection processing is performed but the detection of an address match condition and the generation of an acknowledge require program intervention.
  - SIO1 can generate an interrupt after automatically placing the clock line at the low level on the falling edge of the eighth clock for recognition by a program.
- 5) Interrupt generation

An interrupt request is generated at the end of communication if the interrupt request enable flag is set.

- 6) To control serial interface 1 (SIO1), it is necessary to control the following special function registers.
  - SCON1, SBUF1, SBR1
  - P1, P1DDR, P1FCR

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE34	0000 0000	R/W	SCON1	-	SI1M1	SI1M0	SI1RUN	SI1REC	SI1DIR	SI10VR	SI1END	SI1IE
FE35	00000 00000	R/W	SBUF1	SBUF18	SBUF17	SBUF16	SBUF15	SBUF14	SBUF13	SBUF12	SBUF11	SBUF10
FE36	0000 0000	R/W	SBR1	-	SBRG17	SBRG16	SBRG15	SBRG14	SBRG13	SBRG12	SBRG11	SBRG10

# 3.7.3 Circuit Configuration

#### 3.7.3.1 SIO1 control register (SCON1) (8-bit register)

1) The SIO1 control register controls the operation and interrupts of SIO1.

## 3.7.3.2 SIO1 shift register (SIOSF1) (8-bit shift register)

- 1) This register is a shift register used to transfer and receive SIO1 data.
- 2) This register cannot be accessed with an instruction. It is accessed via SBUF1.

# 3.7.3.3 SIO1 data register (SBUF1) (9-bit register)

- 1) The lower-order 8 bits of SBUF1 are transferred to SIOSF1 at the beginning of data transfer.
- 2) At the end of data transfer, the contents of SIOSF1 are placed in the lower-order 8 bits of SBUF1. In modes 1, 2, and 3, since the 9th input data is placed in bit 8 of SBUF1, it is possible to check for a stop bit.

#### 3.7.3.4 SIO1 baudrate generator register (SBR1) (8-bit reload counter)

- 1) This is a reload counter to generate an internal clock.
- 2) The generator can generate clocks of 2 to 512 Tcyc in modes 0 and 2 and clocks of 8 to 2048 Tcyc in mode 1.

Table 3.7.1 SIO1 Operations and Operating Modes

		Synchrono	us (Mode 0)	UART (Mo	de 1)	Bus Master	(Mode 2)	Bus Slave (	Mode 3)
		Transmit SI1REC = 0	Receive SI1REC = 1	Transmit SI1REC = 0	Receive SI1REC = 1	Transmit SI1REC = 0	Receive SI1REC = 1	Transmit SI1REC = 0	Receive SI1REC = 1
Start bit		None	None	Output (Low)	Input (Low)	See 1) and 2) below	Not required	Not required	See 2) below
Data outp	ut	8 (Shift data)	8 (All 1s)	8 (Shift data)	8 (All 1s)	8 (Shift data)	8 (All 1s)	8 (Shift data)	8 (All 1s)
Data inpu	t	8 (Input pin)	<b>←</b>	8 (Input pin)	<b>←</b>	8 (Input pin)	<b>←</b>	8 (Input pin)	<b>←</b>
Stop bit		None	<b>←</b>	Output (High)	Input (H/L)	Input (H/L)	Output (SBUF1 bit8)	Input (H/L)	Output (L)
Clock		8	<b>←</b>	9 (Internal)	<b>←</b>	9	<b>←</b>	Low output on falling edge of 8th clock	<b>←</b>
Operation	ı start	SIIRUN	<b>←</b>	1) SIIRUN 2) Start bit detected	Start bit detected	1) No start bit on falling edge of SI1END when SI1RUN = 1 2) With start bit on rising edge of SI1RUN when SI1END = 0	1) On left side	1) On right side	1) Clock released on falling edge of SI1END when SI1RUN = 1 2) Start bit detected when SI1RUN = 0 and SI1END = 0
Period		2 to 512 Teye	<b>←</b>	8 to 2048 Tcyc	<b>←</b>	2 to 512Tcyc	<b>←</b>	2 to 512Tcyc	<b>←</b>
SI1RUN (bit 5)	Set	Instruction	<b>←</b>	1) Instruction 2) Start bit detected	Start bit detected	Instruction	Already set	Already set	Start bit detected
	Clear	End of processing	←	End of stop bit	<b>←</b>	1) Stop condition detected 2) When arbitration lost (Note 1)	<b>←</b>	1) Stop condition detected 2) Ack = 1 detected	<b>←</b>
SI1END (bit 1)	Set	End of processing	<b>←</b>	End of stop bit	<b>←</b>	1) Rising edge of 9th clock 2) Stop condition detected	<b>←</b>	1) Falling edge of 8th clock 2) Stop condition detected	<b>←</b>
	Clear	Instruction	←	Instruction	←	Instruction	<b>←</b>	Instruction	←

(Continued on next page)

Table 3.7.1 SIO1 Operations and Operating Modes (cont.)

				UART (Mo	de 1)	<b>Bus Master</b>	(Mode 2)	Bus Slave (	Mode 3)
			Receive		Receive	Transmit	Receive	Transmit	Receive
		SI1REC = 0	SI1REC = 1	SI1REC = 0	SI1REC = 1	SI1REC = 0	SI1REC = 1	SI1REC = 0	SI1REC = 1
SI10VR	Set	1) Falling	←	1) Falling	←	1) SI1END	←	1) Falling	←
(bit 2)		edge of		edge of		set		edge of	
		clock		clock		conditions		clock	
		detected		detected		met when		detected	
		when		when		SI1END = 1		when	
		SI1RUN=0		SI1RUN=0				SI1RUN = 0	
		2) SI1END		2) SI1END				2) SI1END	
		set		set				set	
		conditions		conditions				conditions	
		met when		met when				met when	
		SI1END=1		SI1END=1				SI1END = 1	
								3) Start bit	
								detected	
	Clear	Instruction	←	Instruction	$\leftarrow$	Instruction	$\leftarrow$	Instruction	$\leftarrow$
Shift data	l	SBUF1	$\leftarrow$	SBUF1	←	SBUF1	←	SBUF1	←
update		Shifter at		Shifter at		Shifter at		Shifter at	
		beginning		beginning		beginning of		beginning of	
		of		of		operation		operation	
		operation		operation					
$Shift \rightarrow Sl$	BUF1	Rising edge	←	When 8 bit	When 8-bit	Rising edge	←	Rising edge	$\leftarrow$
(bits 0 to	7)	of 8th clock		data	data	of 8th clock		of 8th clock	
				transferred	received				
Automati	с	None	←	Input data	←	Input data	←	Input data	←
update of				read in on		read in on		read in on	
SBUF1 b	it 8			stop bit		rising edge		rising edge	
						of 9th clock		of 9th clock	

Note 1: If internal data output state = "H" and data port state = "L" conditions are detected at the rising edges of the first to 8th clocks, the microcontroller recognizes a bus arbitration lost and clears SI1RUN (and also stops the generation of the clock immediately).

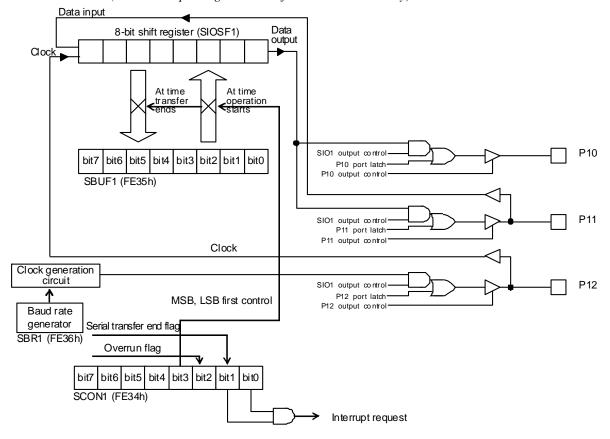


Figure 3.7.1 SIO1 Mode 0: Synchronous 8-bit Serial I/O Block Diagram (SI1M1=0, SI1M0=0)

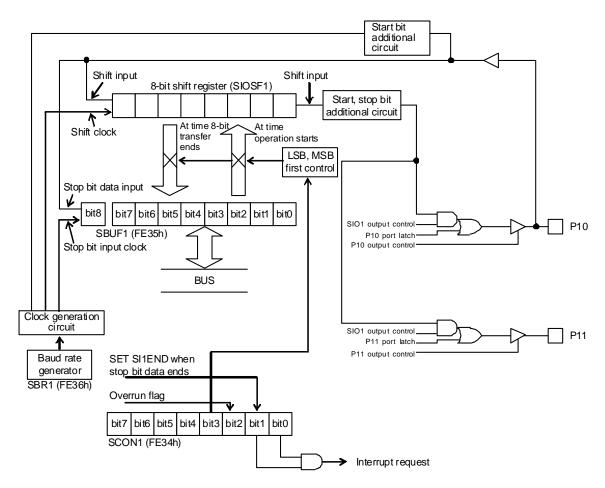


Figure 3.7.2 SIO1 Mode 1: Asynchronous Serial [UART] Block Diagram (SI1M1=0, SI1M0=1)

# 3.7.4 SIO1 Transmission Examples

## 3.7.4.1 Synchronous serial transmission (mode 0)

- 1) Setting the clock
  - Set up SBR1 when using an internal clock.
- 2) Setting the transmission mode
  - Set as follows: SI1M0=0, SI1M1=0, SI1DIR, SI1IE=1
- 3) Setting up the ports and SI1REC (BIT4)

	Clock Port P12
Internal clock	Output
External clock	Input

	Data Output Port P10	Data I/O Port P11	SI1REC
Data transmission only	Output	_	0
Data reception only	_	Input	1
Data transmission/reception (3-wire)	Output	Input	0
Data transmission/reception (2-wire)	-	N-channel open drain output	0

- 4) Setting up output data
  - Write output data into SBUF1 in the data transmission mode (SI1REC=0).
- 5) Starting operation
  - Set SI1RUN.
- 6) Reading data (after an interrupt)
  - Read SBUF1 (SBUF1 has been loaded with serial data from the data I/O port even in the transmission mode).
  - · Clear SI1END and exit interrupt processing.
  - Return to step 4) when repeating processing.

## 3.7.4.2 Asynchronous serial transmission (Mode 1)

- 1) Setting the baudrate
  - Set up SBR1.
- 2) Setting the transmission mode
  - Set as follows:

SI1M0 = 1, SI1M1 = 0, SI1DIR, SI1IE = 1

3) Setting up the ports.

	Data Output Port P10	Data I/O Port P11
Data transmission/reception (2-wire)	Output	Input
Data transmission/reception (1-wire)	-	N-channel open drain output

- 4) Starting transmission
  - Set SI1REC to 0 and write output data into SBUF1.
  - · Set SI1RUN.

Note: Use the SIO1 data I/O port (P11) when using the SIO1 transmission only in mode 1.

In mode 1, transmission is automatically started when a falling edge of receive data is detected. While mode 1 is on, the falling edge of data is always detected at the data I/O port (P11). Consequently, if the transmit port is assigned to the data output port (P10), it is likely that data transmissions are started unexpectedly according to the changes in the state of P11.

- 5) Starting receive operation
  - Set SI1REC to 1. (Once SI1REC is set to 1, do not attempt to write data to the SCON1 register until the SI1END flag is set.)
  - · Detect the falling edge of receive data.
- 6) Reading data (after an interrupt)
  - Read SBUF1. (SBUF1 has been loaded with serial data read from the data I/O port even in the transmission mode. When SBUF1 is read in, the data about the position of the stop bit is read into bit 1 of the PSW.)
  - Clear SI1END and exit interrupt processing.
  - Return to step 4) when repeating processing.

Note: Make sure that the following conditions are met when performing continuous mode reception processing with SIO1 in mode 1 (UART):

- The number of stop bits is set to 2 or greater.
- Clearing of SI1END during interrupt processing terminates before the next start bit arrives.

#### 3.7.4.3 Bus-master mode (mode 2)

- 1) Setting the clock
  - · Set up SBR1.
- 2) Setting the mode.
  - Set as follows:

```
SI1M0 = 0, SI1M1 = 1, SI1DIR, SI1IE = 1, SI1REC = 0
```

- 3) Setting up the ports
  - Designate the clock and data ports as N-channel open drain output ports.
- 4) Starting communication (sending an address)
  - · Load SBUF1 with address data.
  - Set SI1RUN (transfer a start bit + SBUF1 (8 bits) + stop bit (H)).
- 5) Checking for address data (after an interrupt)
  - Read SBUF1. (SBUF1 has been loaded with serial data from the data I/O port even in the transmission mode. When SBUF1 is read in, the data about the position of the stop bit is read into bit 1 of the PSW.)
  - Check for an acknowledge by reading bit 1 of the PSW.
  - An interrupt does not occur when arbitration lost because SI1RUN is cleared. (Refer to the note of the table 3-10-1). When possibility of the arbitration lost exists, for example other device of the master mode is in the system, do the timeout processing using the timer module and detect the case of the arbitration lost.
- 6) Sending data
  - Load SBUF1 with output data.
  - Clear SI1END and exit interrupt processing (transfer SBUF1 (8 bits) + stop bit (H)).

#### **SIO1**

- 7) Checking sent data (after an interrupt)
  - Read SBUF1. (SBUF1 has been loaded with serial data from the data I/O port even in the transmission mode. When SBUF1 is read in, the data about the position of the stop bit is read into bit 1 of the PSW.)
  - · Check for an acknowledge by reading bit 1 of the PSW.
  - An interrupt does not occur when arbitration lost because SI1RUN is cleared. (Refer to the note of the table 3-10-1). When possibility of the arbitration lost exists, for example other device of the master mode is in the system, do the timeout processing using the timer module and detect the case of the arbitration lost.
  - Return to step 6) when continuing data transmission.
  - Go to step 10) to terminate communication.
- 8) Receiving data
  - Set SI1REC to 1.
  - Clear SI1END and exit interrupt processing (receive (8bits) + SBUF1 bit 8 (acknowledge) output).
- 9) Reading received data (after an interrupt)
  - · Read SBUF1.
  - Return to step 8) to continue reception of data.
  - Go to \* in step 10) to terminate processing. At this moment, SBUF1 bit 8 data has already been presented as acknowledge data and the clock for the master side has been released.
- 10) Terminating communication
  - Manipulate the clock output port (P12FCR = 0, P12DDR = 1, P12 = 0) and set the clock output to 0.
  - Manipulate the data output port (P11FCR = 0, P11DDR = 1, P11 = 0) and set the data output to 0.
  - Restore the clock output port into the original state (P12FCR = 1, P12DDR = 1, P12 = 0) and release the clock output.
  - \* Wait for all slaves to release the clock and the clock to be set to 1.
  - Allow for a data setup time, then manipulate the data output port (P11FCR= 0, P11DDR = 1, P11 = 1) and set the data output to 1. In this case, the SIO1 overrun flag (SI1OVR:FE34, bit 2) is set but this will exert no influence on the operation of SIO1.
  - Restore the data output port into the original state (set P11FCR to 1, then P11DDR to 1 and P11 to 0).
  - Clear SI1END and SI1OVR, then exit interrupt processing.
  - Return to step 4) to repeat processing.

#### 3.7.4.4 Bus-slave mode (mode 3)

- 1) Setting the clock
  - Set up SBR1 (to set the acknowledge data setup time).
- 2) Setting the transmission mode
  - Set as follows:

```
SI1M0 = 1, SI1M1 = 1, SI1DIR, SI1IE = 1, SI1REC = 0
```

- 3) Setting up ports
  - Designate the clock and data ports as N-channel open drain output ports.

- 4) Starting communication (waiting for an address)
  - \*1 Set SI1REC.
  - \*2 SI1RUN is automatically set on detection of a start bit.
    - Perform receive processing (8 bits) and set the clock output to 0 on the falling edge of the 8th clock, which generates an interrupt.
- 5) Checking address data (after an interrupt)
  - Detecting a start condition sets SI1OVR. Check SI1RUN = 1 and SI1OVR = 1 to determine if the address has been received.
    - (SI1OVR is not automatically cleared. Clear it by instruction.)
  - Read SBUF1 and check the address.
  - If no address match occurs, clear SI1RUN and SI1END and exit interrupt processing, then wait for a stop condition detection at \* of step 8).
- 6) Receiving data
  - \* Clear SI1END and exit interrupt processing. (If a receive sequence has been performed, send an acknowledge and release the clock port after the lapse of (SBR1 value + 1) × Tcyc.)
    - When a stop condition is detected, SI1RUN is automatically cleared and an interrupt is generated. Then, clear SI1END to exit interrupt processing and return to \*2 in step 4).
    - Perform a receive operation (8 bits), then set the clock output to 0 on the falling edge of
      the 8th clock, after which an interrupt occurs. The clock counter will be cleared if a start
      condition is detected in the middle of receive processing. In such a case, another 8 clocks
      are required to generate an interrupt.
    - · Read SBUF1 and store the read data.
      - Note: Bit 8 of SBUF1 is not yet updated because the rising edge of 9th clock has not yet occurred.
    - Return to \* in step 6) to continue receive processing.
- 7) Sending data
  - · Clear SI1REC.
  - Load SBUF1 with output data.
  - Clear SI1END and exit interrupt processing. (Send an acknowledge for the preceding reception operation and release the clock port after the lapse of (SBR1 value + 1) × Tcyc.)
  - \*1 Perform a send operation (8 bits) and set the clock output to 0 on the falling edge of the 8th clock, after which an interrupt occurs.
  - \*2 Go to \*3 in step 7) if SI1RUN is set to 1.
    - If SI1RUN is set to 0, implying an interrupt from \*4 in step 7), clear SI1END and SI1OVR and return to \*1 in step 4).
  - \*3 Read SBUF1 and check send data as required.
    - Note: Bit 8 of SBUF1 is not yet updated because the rising edge of 9th clock has not yet occurred.
    - Load SBUF1 with the next output data.
    - Clear SI1END and exit interrupt processing. (Release the clock port after the lapse of (SBR1 value + 1) × Tcyc).
    - Return to \*1 in step7) if an acknowledge from the master is present (L).
    - If there is no acknowledge presented from the master (H), SIO1, recognizing the end of data transmission, automatically clears SI1RUN and release the data port.
      - \* However, in a case that restart condition comes just after the event, SI1REC must be set to "1" before exiting the interrupt (SI1REC is for detecting a start condition and is not set automatically). It may disturb the transmission of address from the master if there is an unexpected restart just after slave's transmission (when SI1REC is not set 1 by instruction).
  - \*4 When a stop condition is detected, an interrupt is generated and processing returns to \*2 in step 7).

#### SIO1

- 8) Terminating communication
  - · Set SI1REC.
  - Return to \* in step 6) to cause communication to automatically terminate.
  - To force communication to termination, clear SI1RUN and SI1END (release the clock port).
  - \* An interrupt occurs when a stop condition is detected. Then, clear SI1END and SI1OVR and return to \*2 in step 4).

# 3.7.5 Related Registers

# 3.7.5.1 SIO1 control register (SCON1)

1) The SIO1 control register is an 8-bit register that controls the operation and interrupts of SIO1.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE34	0000 0000	R/W	SCON1	-	SI1M1	SI1M0	SI1RUN	SI1REC	SI1DIR	SI10VR	SI1END	SIIE

# SI1M1 (bit 7): SIO1 mode control

SI1M0 (bit 6): SIO1 mode control

Table 3-7.2 SIO1 Operation Modes

Mode	SI1M1	SI1M0	Operating Mode
0	0	0	Synchronous 8-bit SIO
1	0	1	UART (1 stop bit, no parity)
2	1	0	Bus master mode
3	1	1	Bus slave mode

#### SI1RUN (bit 5): SIO1 operation flag

- 1) A 1 in this bit indicates that SIO1 is running.
- 2) See Table 3-10.1 for the conditions for setting and clearing this bit.

#### SI1REC (bit 4): SIO1 receive/send control

- 1) Setting this bit to 1 places SIO1 into the receive mode.
- 2) Setting this bit to 0 places SIO1 into the send mode.

# SI1DIR (bit 3): MSB/LSB first select

- 1) Setting this bit to 1 places SIO1 into the MSB first mode.
- 2) Setting this bit to 0 places SIO1 into the LSB first mode.

#### SI10VR (bit 2): SIO1 overrun flag

- 1) In mode 0, 1, 3, this bit is set when a falling edge of the input clock is detected with SI1RUN = 0.
- 2) This bit is set if the conditions for setting SI1END are established when SI1END = 1.
- 3) In modes 3 this bit is set when the start condition is detected.
- 4) This bit must be cleared with an instruction.

#### SI1END (bit 1): End of serial transmission flag

- 1) This bit is set when serial transmission terminates (see Table 3-10.1).
- 2) This bit must be cleared with an instruction.

## SI1IE (bit 0): SIO1 interrupt request enable control

When this bit and SI1END are set to 1, an interrupt request to vector address 003BH is generated.

# 3.7.5.2 Serial buffer 1 (SBUF1)

- 1) Serial buffer 1 is a 9-bit register used to store data to be handled during SIO1 serial transmission.
- 2) The lower-order 8 bits of SBUF1 are transferred to the data shift register for data transmission/reception at the beginning of transmission processing and the contents of the shift register are placed in the lower-order 8 bits of SBUF1 when 8-bit data is transferred.
- 3) In modes 1, 2, and 3, bit 8 of SBUF1 is loaded with the 9th data bit that is received (data about the position of the stop bit).

Addr	ess l	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE3	35	00000 00000	R/W	SBUF1	SBUF18	SBUF17	SBUF16	SBUF15	SBUF14	SBUF13	SBUF12	SBUF11	SBUF10

## 3.7.5.3 Baudrate generator register (SBR1)

- 1) The baudrate generator register is an 8-bit register that defines the baudrate of SIO1.
- 2) Loading this register with data causes the baudrate generating counter to be initialized immediately.

3) The baudrate varies from mode to mode (the baudrate generator is disabled in mode 3).

Modes 0 and 2:  $TSBR1 = (SBR1 \text{ value} + 1) \times 2 \text{ Tcyc}$ 

(Value range = 2 to 512 Tcyc)

Mode 1:  $TSBR1 = (SBR1 \text{ value} + 1) \times 8Tcyc$ 

(Value range = 8 to 2048Tcyc)

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE36	0000 0000	R/W	SBR1	-	SBRG17	SBRG16	SBRG15	SBRG14	SBRG13	SBRG12	SBRG11	SBRG10

# 3.8 AD Converter (ADC12)

#### 3.8.1 Overview

This series of microcontrollers incorporates a 12-bit resolution AD converter that has the features listed below. It allows the microcontroller to take in analog signals easily.

- 1) 12-bit resolution
- 2) Successive approximation
- 3) AD conversion mode select (resolution switching)
- 4) Analog input (7-channel)/analog input (1-channel) with 10×/20× operational amplifier analog input(1-channel) for VREF1.2V, analog input(1-channel) for temperature sensor
- 5) Conversion time select
- 6) Reference-voltage automatic generation
- 7) AD conversion reference-voltage source select

#### 3.8.2 Functions

- 1) Successive approximation
  - The ADC has a resolution of 12 bits.
  - · It requires some conversion time after starting conversion processing.
  - The conversion results are placed in the AD conversion results register (ADRLC, ADRHC).
- 2) AD conversion select (resolution switching)

The AD converter supports two AD conversion modes: 12- and 8-bit conversion modes so that the appropriate conversion resolution can be selected according to the operating conditions of the application. Mode switching is accomplished through the AD mode register (ADMRC).

3) Analog input

The signal to be converted is selected using the AD control register (ADCRC) out of 10 types of analog signals that are supplied from ports P02 toP04,P13 to P15 and P70, the  $10\times/20\times$  amplifier, VREF1.2V, temperature sensor.

See "3.9 Reference Voltage Generator Circuit(VREF)" for the control of the  $10 \times /20 \times$  amplifier.

4) Conversion time select

The AD conversion time can be set to 1/1 to 1/128 (frequency division ratio). The AD mode register (ADMRC) and AD conversion result low byte register (ADRLC) are used to select the conversion time for appropriate AD conversion.

5) Automatic reference voltage generation control

The ADC incorporates a reference voltage generator that automatically generates the reference voltage when an AD conversion starts and stops the generation when the conversion ends. Accordingly, set/reset control of reference voltage generation is not necessary. Also, there is no need to supply reference voltage externally.

6) AD conversion reference-voltage source select

AD conversion reference-voltage source can be selected from VDD, internal-VREF, external voltage source.

See "3.9 Reference Voltage Generator Circuit(VREF)" for the internal-VREF.

- 7) It is necessary to manipulate the following special control registers to control the AD converter:
  - ADCRC, ADMRC, ADRLC, ADRHC

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE58	0000 0000	R/W	ADCRC	AD CHSEL3	AD CHSEL2	AD CHSEL1	AD CHSEL0	ADCR3	AD START	AD ENDF	ADIE
FE59	0000 0000	R/W	ADMRC	ADMD4	ADMD3	ADMD2	ADMD1	ADMD0	ADMR2	ADTM1	ADTM0

# LC870G00 Chapter 3

FE5A	0000 0000	R/W	ADRLC	DATAL3	DATAL2	DATAL1	DATAL0	ADRL3	ADRL2	ADRL1	ADTM2
FE5B	0000 0000	R/W	ADRHC	DATA7	DATA6	DATA5	DATA4	DATA3	DATA2	DATA1	DATA0

# 3.8.3 Circuit Configuration

#### 3.8.3.1 AD conversion control circuit

1) The AD conversion control circuit runs in two modes: 12- and 8-bit AD conversion modes.

#### 3.8.3.2 Comparator circuit

1) The comparator circuit consists of a comparator that compares the analog input with the reference voltage and a control circuit that controls the reference voltage generator circuit and the conversion result. The end of conversion flag (ADENDF) of the AD control register (ADCRC) is set when an analog input channel is selected and the AD conversion terminates in the conversion time designated by the conversion time control register. The conversion results are placed in the AD conversion results register (ADRHC, ADRLC).

## 3.8.3.3 Multiplexer 1 (MPX1)

1) Multiplexer 1 is used to select the analog signal to be subject to AD conversion from 8 channels of analog signals.

## 3.8.3.4 Automatic reference voltage generator circuit

1)The reference voltage generator circuit consists of a network of ladder resistors and a multiplexer (MPX2) and generates the reference voltage that is supplied to the comparator circuit. Generation of the reference voltage is automatically started when an AD conversion starts and stopped when the conversion ends. The reference voltage output ranges from reference-voltage to VSS. AD conversion reference-voltage source can be selected from VDD, internal-VREF, external voltage source.

See "3.9 Reference Voltage Generator Circuit(VREF)" for the internal-VREF.

## 3.8.4 Related Registers

## 3.8.4.1 AD converter control register (ADCRC)

1) The AD converter control register is an 8-bit register that controls the operation of the AD converter.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE58	0000 0000	R/W	ADCRC	AD	AD	AD	AD	ADCR3	AD	AD	ADIE
TESO	0000 0000	K/ W	ADCKC	CHSEL3	CHSEL2	CHSEL1	CHSEL0	ADCKS	START	ENDF	ADIE

ADCHSEL3 (bit 7): ADCHSEL2 (bit 6):

ADCHSEL1 (bit 5):

AD conversion input signal select

ADCHSEL0 (bit 4):

These 4 bits are used to select the signal to be subject to AD conversion.

AD CHSEL3	AD CHSEL2	AD CHSEL1	AD CHSEL0	Signal Input Pin
0	0	0	0	10×/20× amplifier
0	0	0	1	VREF1.2V
0	0	1	0	P02/AN2
0	0	1	1	P03/AN3
0	1	0	0	P04/AN4
0	1	0	1	P15/AN5
0	1	1	0	P14/AN6
0	1	1	1	P13/AN7
1	0	0	1	P70/AN9
1	1	1	1	Temperature sensor

#### ADCR3 (bit 3): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

#### ADSTART (bit 2): AD conversion control

Starts (1) or stops (0) AD conversion processing. Setting this bit to 1 starts AD conversion. The bit is reset automatically when the AD conversion ends. The time specified by the conversion time control register is required to complete the conversion. The conversion time is defined using three bits, i.e., the ADTM2 bit (bit 0) of the AD conversion result register low byte (ADRLC) and the ADTM1 (bit 1) and ADTM0 (bit 0) of the AD mode register (ADMRC).

Setting this bit to 0 stops the AD conversion. No correct conversion results can be obtained if this bit is cleared when AD conversion is in progress.

Never clear this bit while the AD conversion processing is in progress.

# ADENDF (bit 1): End of AD conversion flag

This bit identifies the end of an AD conversion operation. It is set when the AD conversion is finished. Then, an interrupt request to vector address 0043H is generated if ADIE is set to 1. If ADENDF is set to 0, it indicates that no AD conversion operation is in progress.

This flag must be cleared with an instruction.

## ADIE (bit 0): AD conversion interrupt request enable control

An interrupt request to vector address 0043H is generated when this bit and ADENDF are set to 1.

Notes:

- It is inhibited to set ADCHSEL3 to ADCHSEL0 to a value 1000 and from 1010 to 1110.
- Do not place the microprocessor in the HALT or HOLD mode with ADSTART set to 1. Make sure that ADSTART is set to 0 before putting the microprocessor in the HALT or HOLD mode.

#### 3.8.4.2 AD mode register (ADMRC)

1) The AD mode (selector) register is an 8-bit register that controls AD converter operation mode.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE59	0000 0000	R/W	ADMRC	ADMD4	ADMD3	ADMD2	ADMD1	ADMD0	ADMR2	ADTM1	ADTM0

### ADMD4 (bit 7): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

#### ADMD3 (bit 6): AD conversion mode control (resolution switching)

This bit selects the AD converter's conversion mode between 12-bit AD conversion mode (0) and 8-bit AD conversion mode (1).

If this bit is set to 1, the AD converter serves as an 8-bit AD converter. The conversion results are placed only in the AD conversion results high byte register (ADRHC); the contents of the AD conversion results low byte register (ADRLC) remain unchanged.

If this bit is set to 0, the AD converter serves as a 12-bit AD converter. The conversion results are placed in the AD conversion results high byte register (ADRHC) and the higher-order 4 bits of AD conversion results low byte register (ADRLC).

## ADMD2 (bit 5): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

#### ADMD1 (bit 4): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

### ADMD0 (bit 3): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

## ADC12

## ADMR2 (bit 2): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

ADTM1 (bit 1): AD conversion time control ADTM0 (bit 0):

These bits and ADTM2 bit (bit 0) of the AD conversion results low byte register (ADRLC) define the conversion time.

ADRLC Register	ADMRC	Register	AD Frequency Division Ratio
ADTM2	ADTM1	ADTM0	
0	0	0	1/1
0	0	1	1/2
0	1	0	1/4
0	1	1	1/8
1	0	0	1/16
1	0	1	1/32
1	1	0	1/64
1	1	1	1/128

## **Conversion time calculation formulas**

- 12-bit AD conversion mode: Conversion time =  $((52/(AD \text{ division ratio})) + 2) \times (1/3) \times \text{Tcyc}$
- 8-bit AD conversion mode: Conversion time =  $((32/(AD \text{ division ratio})) + 2) \times (1/3) \times \text{Tcyc}$

## Notes:

- The conversion time is doubled in the following cases:
  - 1) The AD conversion is carried out in the 12-bit AD conversion mode for the first time after a system reset.
  - 2) The AD conversion is carried out for the first time after the AD conversion mode is switched from 8-bit to 12-bit AD conversion mode.
- The conversion time determined by the above formula is taken in the second and subsequent conversions or in the AD conversions that are carried out in the 8-bit AD conversion mode.

#### 3.8.4.3 AD conversion results low byte register (ADRLC)

- 1) The AD conversion results low byte register is used to hold the lower-order 4 bits of the results of an AD conversion carried out in the 12-bit AD conversion mode and to control the conversion time.
- 2) Since the data in this register is not established during an AD conversion, the conversion results must be read out only after the AD conversion is completed.

_	Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
	FE5A	0000 0000	R/W	ADRLC	DATAL3	DATAL2	DATAL1	DATAL0	ADRL3	ADRL2	ADRL1	ADTM2

DATAL3 (bit 7):

DATAL2 (bit 6):

AD conversion results lower-order 4 bits

DATAL1 (bit 5):

DATAL0 (bit 4):

ADRL3 (bit 3): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

ADRL2 (bit 2): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

ADRL1 (bit 1): Fixed bit

Must always be set to 0.

#### ADTM2 (bit 0): AD conversion time control

This bit and AD mode register (ADMRC) bits ADTM1 (bit 1) and ADTM0 (bit 0) are used to control the conversion time. See the subsection on the AD mode register for the procedure to set the conversion time.

#### Note:

 The conversion results data contains some errors (quantization error + combination error). Be sure to use only valid conversion results while referring to the latest "SANYO Semiconductors Data Sheet".

#### 3.8.4.4 AD conversion results high byte register (ADRHC)

- 1) The AD conversion results high byte register is used to hold the higher-order 8 bits of the results of an AD conversion that is carried out in the 12-bit AD conversion mode. The register stores the whole 8 bits of an AD conversion that is carried out in the 8-bit AD conversion mode.
- 2) Since the data in this register is not established during an AD conversion, the conversion results must be read out only after the AD conversion is completed.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE5B	0000 0000	R/W	ADRHC	DATA7	DATA6	DATA5	DATA4	DATA3	DATA2	DATA1	DATA0

## 3.8.5 ADC Conversion Example

#### 3.8.5.1 12-bit AD conversion mode

- 1) Setting up the 12-bit AD conversion mode
  - Set the ADMD3 bit (bit 6) of the AD mode register (ADMRC) to 0.
- 2) Setting up the conversion time
  - To set the conversion time to 1/32, set the AD conversion results low byte register (ADRLC), bit 0 (ADTM2) to 1 and the AD mode register (ADMRC), bit 1 (ADTM1) to 0 and bit 0 (ADTM0) to 1.
- 3) Setting up the input channel
  - When using AD channel input AN5, set AD control register (ADCRC), bit 7 (ADCHSEL3) to 0, bit 6 (ADCHSEL2) to 1, bit 5 (ADCHSEL1) to 0, and bit 4 (ADCHSEL0) to 1.
- 4) Starting AD conversion
  - Set bit 2 (ADSTART) of the AD control register (ADCRC) to 1.
  - The conversion time is doubled after a system reset and when the AD conversion is carried out for the first time after the AD conversion mode is switched from 8-bit to 12-bit AD conversion mode. The conversion time determined by the formula is taken in the second and subsequent conversions.
- 5) Testing the end of AD conversion flag
  - Monitor bit 1 (ADENDF) of the AD control register (ADCRC) until it is set to 1.
  - Clear the end of conversion flag ADENDF to 0 after confirming that the ADENDF flag (bit 1) is set to 1.
- 6) Reading in the AD conversion results
  - Read the AD conversion results high byte register (ADRHC) and AD conversion results low byte register (ADRLC). Since the conversion results data contains some errors (quantization error + combination error), use only the valid part of the conversion data selected according to the specifications given in the latest "SANYO Semiconductors Data Sheet."
  - Pass the above read data to the application software processing.
  - Return to step 4) to repeat the conversion processing.

#### 3.8.6 Hints on the Use of the ADC

- The conversion time that the user can select varies depending on the frequency of the cycle clock. When preparing a program, refer to the latest "SANYO Semiconductors Data Sheet" to select an appropriate conversion time.
- 2) Setting ADSTART to 0 while conversion is in progress will stop the conversion function.
- 3) Do not place the microcontroller in the HALT or HOLD mode while AD conversion processing is in progress. Make sure that ADSTART is set to 0 before putting the microcontroller in the HALT or HOLD mode.
- 4) ADSTART is automatically reset and the AD converter stops operation if a reset is triggered while AD conversion processing is in progress.
- 5) When conversion is finished, the end of AD conversion flag (ADENDF) is set and, at the same time, the AD conversion operation control bit (ADSTART) is reset. The end of conversion condition can be identified by monitoring ADENDF. Setting ADIE causes an interrupt request to vector address 0043H to be generated at the end of conversion.
- 6) The conversion time is doubled in the following cases:
  - The AD conversion is carried out in the 12-bit AD conversion mode for the first time after a system reset.
  - The AD conversion is carried out for the first time after the AD conversion mode is switched from 8-bit to 12-bit AD conversion mode.
  - The conversion time determined using the "conversion time calculation formula" is adopted in the second and subsequent conversions or in the AD conversions that are carried out in the 8-bit AD conversion mode.
- 7) The conversion results data contains some errors (quantization error + combination error). Be sure to use only valid conversion results while referring to the latest "SANYO Semiconductors Data Sheet."
- 8) Make sure that only input voltages that fall within the specified range are supplied to pins P00/APIM, P01/APIP, P02/AN2 to P04/AN4, P15/AN5 to P13/AN7 and P70/AN9. Application of a voltage greater than VDD or lower than VSS to an input pin may exert adverse influences on the converted value of the channel in question or other channels.
- 9) Take the following preventive actions as countermeasures to keep the reduction in conversion accuracy due to noise interferences as low as possible:
  - Be sure to add external bypass capacitors several  $\mu F$  and thousands pF near the VDD1 and VSS1 pins (as close as possible, desirably 5 mm or less).
  - Add external low-pass (RC) filters or capacitors, most suitable for noise reduction, immediately close to the analog input pins. To avert the adverse coupling influences, use a ground that is free of noise interferences as the ground for the capacitors (rough standard values are:  $R = less than 5 k\Omega$ ,  $C=1000 \ pF$  to  $0.1 \mu F$ ).
  - Do not lay analog signal lines close to, in parallel with, or in a crossed arrangement with digital pulse signal lines or signal lines in which large current changes can occur. Shield both ends of analog signal lines with noise-free ground shields.
  - Make sure that no digital pulses are applied to or generated out of pins adjacent to the analog input pin that is being subject to conversion.
  - Correct conversion results may not be obtained because of noise interferences if the state of port outputs is changing. To minimize the adverse influences of noise interferences, it is necessary to keep the line resistance across the power supply and the VDD pins of the microcontroller at minimum. This should be kept in mind when designing an application circuit.

# ADC12

- •Adjust the amplitudes of the voltage at the oscillator pin and the I/O voltages at the other pins so that they fall within the voltage range between VDD and VSS.
- 10) To obtain valid conversion data, perform conversion operations on the input several times, discard the maximum and minimum values of the conversion results, and take an average of the remaining data.

# 3.9 Reference Voltage Generator Circuit

## 3.9.1 Overview

The reference voltage generator circuit controls the operation (on/off) of the reference voltage (VREF2.0V/4.0V) generator, adjusts the voltage level, and controls the operation of the operational amplifier with a gain of  $10\times/20\times$ , operation the comparator, and disable the digital input function of AD converter input ports

#### 3.9.2 Functions

- 1) The VRCNT register is used to control the operation of the reference voltage (VREF2.0V/4.0V) generator and the comparator.
- 2) The VR2AJ register is used to adjust the VREF2.0V level.
- 3) The ANIEZ register is used to disable the digital input function of AD converter input ports
- 4) The APCNT register is used to control the operation of the operational amplifier with a gain of  $10 \times /20 \times$ .
- 5) The VR4AJ register is used to adjust the VREF4.0V level.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEC0	000H HH00	R/W	VRCNT	VR12ON	VR24ON	CPON	-	-	-	VRADSEL	VR2SELZ
FEC1	XXXX XXXX	R/W	VR2AJ	VR2AJ7	VR2AJ6	VR2AJ5	VR2AJ4	VR2AJ3	VR2AJ2	VR2AJ1	VR2AJ0
FEC2	0000 0000	R/W	ANIEZ	AN13IEZ	AN12IEZ	AN11IEZ	AN10IEZ	AN9IEZ	AN7IEZ	AN6IEZ	AN5IEZ
FEC3	00H0_H000	R/W	APCNT	APON	GAIN20	i	FIX0	1	APDIR	APMD1	APMD0
FEC6	XXXX XXXX	R/W	VR4AJ	VR4AJ7	VR4AJ6	VR4AJ5	VR4AJ4	VR4AJ3	VR4AJ2	VR4AJ1	VR4AJ0

## 3.9.3 Related Registers

# 3.9.3.1 Reference voltage control register (VRCNT)

1) The reference voltage control register is an 8-bit register that controls the generation of the reference voltage (VREF) and the operation of the  $10 \times /20 \times$  operational amplifier.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEC0	000H HH00	R/W	VRCNT	VR12ON	VR24ON	CPON	-	-	-	VRADSEL	VR2SELZ

## VR12ON (bit 7): VREF12 operation control

Setting VR12ON to 0 stops operation of "VREF12V" circuit block. Setting VR12ON to 1 starts operation of "VREF12V" circuit block. (See Fig 3.9.2 for "VREF12V" circuit block.)

#### VR24ON (bit 6): 10x/20x operational amplifier operation control

Setting VR24ON to 0 stops operation of "VREF24V" circuit block. Setting VR24ON to 1 starts operation of "VREF24V" circuit block. (See Fig 3.9.2 for "VREF24V" circuit block.)

#### CPON (bit 5): Comparator operation control

Setting CPON to 1 and VR12ON to 1 starts the operation of the comparator. When (voltage level at P02) < 1.22V, comparator output = High level When (voltage level at P02) > 1.22V, comparator output = Low level

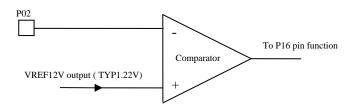


Fig 3.9.1 Comparator

# VRADSEL (bit 1): AD converter reference voltage select

# VR2SELZ (bit 0): VREF24 output voltage select

These bits control the AD converter reference voltage as the bellow table.

	Regi	ster data		VREF24	VREF pin output	AD converter reference
VR12ON	VR24ON	VRADSEL	VR2SELZ	Circuit block		voltage
1	1	1	0	ON	2.0V	2.0V
1	1	1	1	ON	4.0V	4.0V
X	X	0	X	OFF	Open	VDD
0	X	X	X	OFF	Open	VDD
1	0 1 X		X	OFF	Opem	VREF pin
						(external voltage source)

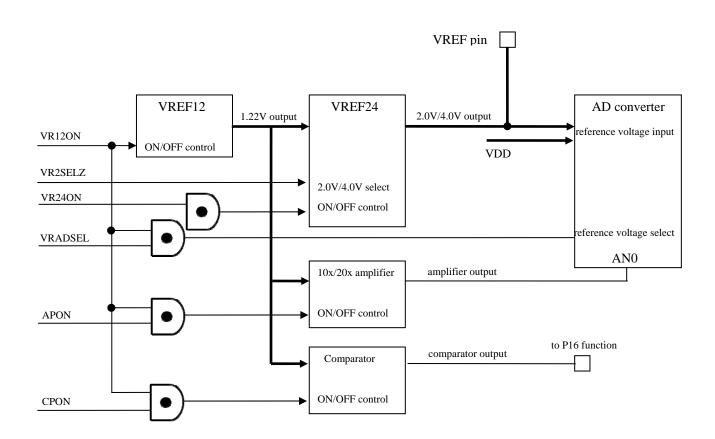


Fig 3.9.2 VREF related circuit

## 3.9.3.2 Reference Voltage 2.0V Adjustment Register (VR2AJ)

The reference voltage 2.0V adjustment register is used to adjust the VREF2.0V level..

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEC1	XXXX XXXX	R/W	VR2AJ	VR2AJ7	VR2AJ6	VR2AJ5	VR2AJ4	VR2AJ3	VR2AJ2	VR2AJ1	VR2AJ0

No access must be made to this register.

# 3.9.3.3 Analog Input Port Control Register (ANIEZ)

The ANIEZ register is used to disable the digital input function of AD converter input ports.

The leak current through the transistor of the digital input circuit of ports can be surpressed, and AD conversion can be done on less noise condition.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEC2	0000 0000	R/W	ANIEZ	AN13IEZ	AN12IEZ	AN11IEZ	AN10IEZ	AN9IEZ	AN7IEZ	AN6IEZ	AN5IEZ

**AN13IEZ (bit 7):** Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

**AN12IEZ (bit 6):** Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

**AN11IEZ (bit 5):** Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

**AN10IEZ (bit 4):** Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

## AN9IEZ (bit 3): Analog input (P70/AN9) port digital input function disable control

When P70/AN9 is used as an analog input, this bit should be set to 1.

When P70/AN9 is not used as an analog input, this bit must be set to 0.

#### AN7IEZ (bit 2): Analog input (P13/AN7) port digital input function disable control

When P13/AN7 is used as an analog input, this bit should be set to 1.

When P13/AN7 is not used as an analog input, this bit must be set to 0.

#### AN6IEZ (bit 1): Analog input (P14/AN6) port digital input function disable control

When P14/AN6 is used as an analog input, this bit should be set to 1.

When P14/AN6 is not used as an analog input, this bit must be set to 0.

#### AN5IEZ (bit 0): Analog input (P15/AN5) port digital input function disable control

When P15/AN5 is used as an analog input, this bit should be set to 1.

When P15/AN5 is not used as an analog input, this bit must be set to 0.

## 3.9.3.4 10x/20x Amplifier Control Register (APCNT)

The APCNT register is used to control the operation of the operational amplifier with a gain of  $10\times/20\times$ .

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEC3	00H0_H000	R/W	APCNT	APON	GAIN20	-	FIX0	-	APDIR	APMD1	APMD0

#### APON (bit 7): 10x/20x operational amplifier operation control

Setting APON to 1 and VR12ON to 1 starts the operation of the 10x/20× operational amplifier.

The output voltage of the amplifier can be measured by performing AD conversion on AD

converter's analog channel 0 (AN0) when the amplifier is running. Provided that

When (APDIR bit2) is set to 0, (Voltage level at P00) (Voltage level at P01)

When (APDIR bit2) is set to 1, (Voltage level at P00) (Voltage level at P01)

## **Reference Voltage Generator Circuit**

#### GAIN20 (bit 6): 10x/20x operational amplifier gain control

Setting this bit to 0 set the gain of operational amplifier 10x.

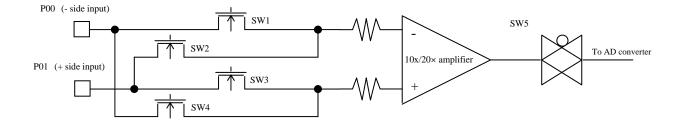
Setting this bit to 1 set the gain of operational amplifier 20x.

(bit 4): Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

# APDIR, APMD1, APMD0 (bit 2,1,0): 10x/20x operational amplifier input switch control

These bits are used to control the switches for the amplifier inputs, so that the AD converter can be used to measure the  $10x/20\times$  amplified voltage between pins P00 and P01 and the offset voltage of the amplifier itself.

Re	gister Da	ata	Amp	olifier li	nput Sv	vitch	Amplifier Output
APDIR	APMD1	APMD0	SW1	SW2	SW3	SW4	Ampinior Surpur
X	0	0	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
0	0	1	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	10x/20× voltage between P00 and P01 including offset
							(Voltage level at P00) (Voltage level at P01)
1	0	1	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	10x/20× voltage between P00 and P01 including offset
							(Voltage level at P00) (Voltage level at P01)
X	1	0	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	Amplifier's offset voltage (when P00 is set to GND)
X	1	1	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	Amplifier's offset voltage (when P01 is set to GND)



# 3.9.3.5 Reference Voltage 4.0V Adjustment Register (VR4AJ)

The reference voltage 4.0V adjustment register is used to adjust the VREF4.0V level..

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEC6	XXXX XXXX	R/W	VR4AJ	VR4AJ7	VR4AJ6	VR4AJ5	VR4AJ4	VR4AJ3	VR4AJ2	VR4AJ1	VR4AJ0

No access must be made to this register.

# 3.9.4 HALT and HOLD Time Operation

In the HALT or HOLD mode, the VREF and AMP circuits retain their state that is established when the microcontroller enters the HALT or HOLD mode.

# 3.10 Voltage control PWM (VCPWM0/VCPWM1)

#### 3.10.1 Overview

This series of microcontrollers incorporates two 12-bit PWMs, named VCPWM0 and VCPWM1. Each PWM is made up of a PWM generator circuit that generates multifrequency 8-bit fundamental PWM waves and a 4-bit additional pulse generator.

#### 3.10.2 Functions

- 1) VCPWM0: Fundamental PWM mode (register VCPWM0L = 0)
  - Fundamental wave period =  $\frac{(16 \text{ to } 256)}{3}$  Tcyc (programmable in  $\frac{16}{3}$  Tcyc increments, common to VCPWM1)
  - High-level pulse width = 0 to Fundamental wave period  $\frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc (programmable in  $\frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc increments)
- 2) VCPWM0: Fundamental wave + Additional pulse PWM mode
  - Fundamental wave period =  $\frac{(16 \text{ to } 256)}{3}$  Tcyc (programmable in  $\frac{16}{3}$  Tcyc increments, common to VCPWM1)
  - Overall period = Fundamental wave period × 16
  - High-level pulse width = 0 to Overall period  $\frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc (programmable in  $\frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc increments)
- 3) VCPWM1: Fundamental wave PWM mode (register VCPWM1L=0)
  - Fundamental wave period =  $\frac{(16 \text{ to } 256)}{3}$  Tcyc (programmable in  $\frac{16}{3}$  Tcyc increments, common to VCPWM0)
  - High-level pulse width = 0 to Fundamental wave period  $\frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc (programmable in  $\frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc increments)
- 4) VCPWM1: Fundamental + Additional pulse PWM mode
  - Fundamental wave period =  $\frac{(16 \text{ to } 256)}{3}$  Tcyc (programmable in  $\frac{16}{3}$  Tcyc increments, common to VCPWM0)
  - Overall period = Fundamental wave period × 16
  - High-level pulse width = 0 to Overall period  $-\frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc (programmable in  $\frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc increments)
- 5) Interrupt generation
  - Interrupt requests are generated at the intervals equal to the overall PWM period if the interrupt request enable bit is set.
- 6) Waveform selection
  - VCPWM0/VCPWM1 can also generate waveform of (the PWM waves and the system clock).
- 7) To control VCPWM0 and VCPWM1, it is necessary to manipulate the following special function registers:
  - VCPWM0L, VCPWM0H, VCPWM1L, VCPWM1H, VCPWM0C, VCPWM01P

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE80	0000 НННН	R/W	VCPWM0L	CPWM0L3	CPWM0L2	CPWM0L1	CPWM0L0	-	-	=	-
FE81	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWM0H	CPWM0H7	CPWM0H6	CPWM0H5	CPWM0H4	CPWM0H3	CPWM0H2	CPWM0H1	СРWM0H0
FE82	0000 НННН	R/W	VCPWM1L	CPWM1L3	CPWM1L2	CPWM1L1	CPWM1L0	•	•	i	-
FE83	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWM1H	CPWM1H7	CPWM1H6	CPWM1H5	CPWM1H4	CPWM1H3	CPWM1H2	CPWM1H1	CPWM1H0
FE84	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWM0C	CPWM0C7	CPWM0C6	CPWM0C5	CPWM0C4	ENCPWM1	ENCPWM0	CPWM00V	CPWM01E
FE85	HHH0 0000	R/W	VCPWM01P	-	-	=	CPWM01P2	CPWM1ECK	CPWM0ECK	FIX0	FIX0

#### **VCPWM**

## 3.10.3 Circuit Configuration

### 3.10.3.1 VCPWM0/VCPWM1 control register (VCPWM0C) (8-bit register)

1) The VCPWM0/VCPWM1 control register controls the operation and interrupts of VCPWM0 and VCPWM1.

#### 3.10.3.2 VCPWM0 compare register L (VCPWM0L) (4-bit register)

- 1) The VCPWM0 compare register L controls the additional pulses of VCPWM0.
- 2) VCPWM0L is assigned bits 7 to 4 and all of its lower-order 4 bits are apparently set to "1" when it is read.
- 3) When the VCPWM0 control bit (VCPWM0C: FE84, bit 2) is set to "0," the output of VCPWM0 (ternary) can be controlled using bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM0L.

## 3.10.3.3 VCPWM0 compare register H (VCPWM0H) (8-bit register)

- 1) The VCPWM0 compare register H controls the fundamental pulse width of VCPWM0.
- 2) When bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM0L are all fixed at "0," VCPWM0 can serve as period-programmable 8-bit PWM that is controlled by VCPWM0H.

## 3.10.3.4 VCPWM1 compare register L (VCPWM1L) (4-bit register)

- 1) The VCPWM1 compare register L controls the additional pulses of VCPWM1.
- 2) VCPWM1L is assigned bits 7 to 4 and all of its lower-order 4 bits are apparently set to "1" when it is read.
- 3) When the VCPWM1 control bit (VCPWM0C: FE84, bit 3) is set to "0," the output of VCPWM1 (ternary) can be controlled using bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM1L.

# 3.10.3.5 VCPWM1 compare register H (VCPWM1H) (8-bit register)

- 1) The VCPWM1 compare register H controls the fundamental pulse width of VCPWM1.
- 2) When bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM1L are all fixed at "0," VCPWM1 can serve as period-programmable 8-bit PWM that is controlled by VCPWM1H.

## 3.10.3.6 VCPWM01 port input register (VCPWM01P) (2-bit register)

- 1) This register controls the waveform and the output buffer of VCPWM0.
- 2) This register controls the waveform and the output buffer of VCPWM1.

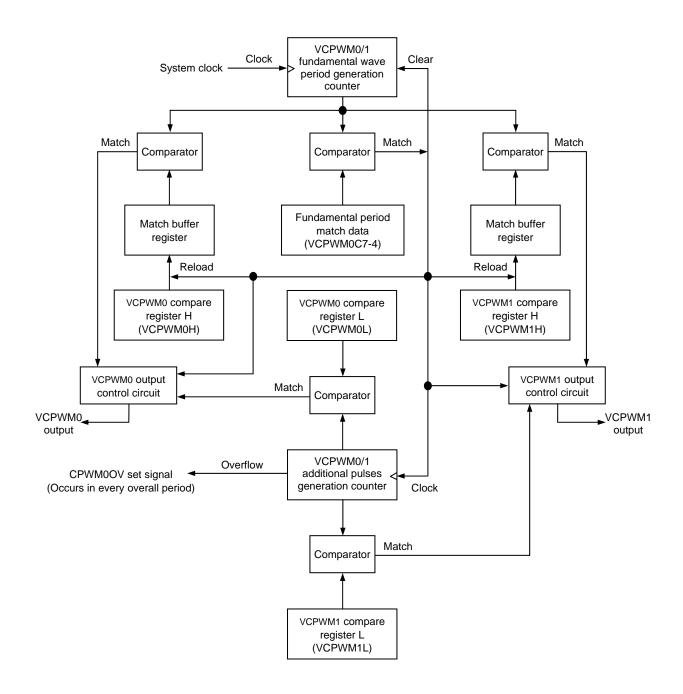


Figure 3.10.1 VCPWM0 and VCPWM1 Block Diagram

# 3.10.4 Related Registers

### 3.10.4.1 VCPWM0/VCPWM1 control register (VCPWM0C)

 The VCPWM0/VCPWM1 control register controls the operation and interrupts of VCPWM0 and VCPWM1.

	Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
Ī	FE84	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWM0C	CPWM0C7	CPWM0C6	CPWM0C5	CPWM0C4	ENCPWM1	ENCPWM0	CPWM0OV	CPWM0IE

### CPWM0C7 to CPWM0C4 (bits 7 to 4): VCPWM0/VCPWM1 period control

• Fundamental wave period = (Value represented by (CPWM0C7 to CPWM0C4) + 1)  $\times \frac{16}{2}$  Tcyc

• Overall period = Fundamental wave period × 16

### **ENCPWM1 (bit 3): VCPWM1 operation control**

• When this bit is set to "1," VCPWM1 is active.

• When this bit is set to "0," the VCPWM1 output (ternary) can be controlled using bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM1L.

## ENCPWM0 (bit 2): VCPWM0 operation control

• When this bit is set to "1," VCPWM0 is active.

• When this bit is set to "0," the VCPWM0 output (ternary) can be controlled using bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM0L.

#### CPWM0OV (bit 1): VCPWM0/VCPWM1 overflow flag

• This bit is set at the interval equal to the overall period of PWM.

• This flag must be cleared with an instruction.

## CPWM0IE (bit 0): VCPWM0/VCPWM1 interrupt request enable control

An interrupt to vector addresses 004BH is generated when this bit and CPWM0OV are both set to "1."

## 3.10.4.2 VCPWM0 compare register L (VCPWM0L)

1) The VCPWM0 compare register L controls the additional pulses of VCPWM0.

2) VCPWM0L is assigned bits 7 to 4 and all of its lower-order 4 bits are apparently set to "1" when it is read.

3) When the VCPWM0 control bit (VCPWM0C: FE84, bit 2) is set to "0," the output of VCPWM0 (ternary) can be controlled using bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM0L.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE80	0000 НННН	R/W	VCPWM0L	CPWM0L3	CPWM0L2	CPWM0L1	CPWM0L0	-	-	-	-

VCPWM0 Output	ENCPWM0 FE84-bit2	CPWM0L3 FE80-bit7	CPWM0L2 FE80-bit6	CPWM0L1,0 FE80-bit5,4
HI-Z	0	-	0	-
LOW	0	0	1	0, 0
HIGH	0	1	1	0, 0

### 3.10.4.3 VCPWM0 compare register H (VCPWM0H)

- 1) The VCPWM0 compare register H controls the fundamental pulse width of VCPWM0. Fundamental pulse width = (Value represented by CPWM0H7 to CPWM0H 0)  $\times \frac{1}{3}$  Tcyc
- 2) When bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM0L are all fixed at "0," VCPWM0 can serve as period-programmable 8-bit PWM that is controlled by VCPWM0H.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE81	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWM0H	CPWM0H7	CPWM0H6	CPWM0H5	CPWM0H4	CPWM0H3	CPWM0H2	CPWM0H1	CPWM0H0

### 3.10.4.4 VCPWM1 compare register L (VCPWM1L)

- 1) The VCPWM1 compare register L controls the additional pulses of VCPWM1.
- 2) VCPWM1L is assigned bits 7 to 4 and all of its lower-order 4 bits are apparently set to "1" when it is read.
- 3) When the VCPWM1 control bit (VCPWM0C: FE84, bit 3) is set to "0," the output of VCPWM1 (ternary) can be controlled using bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM1L.

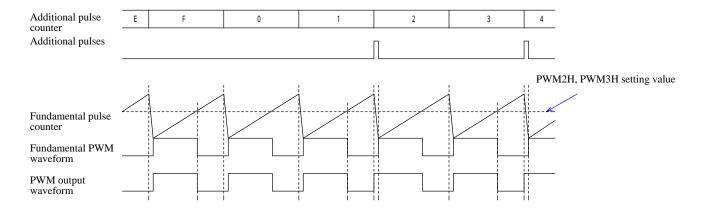
Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE82	0000 НННН	R/W	VCPWM1L	CPWM1L3	CPWM1L2	CPWM1L1	CPWM1L0	-	-	-	-

VCPWM1 Output	ENCPWM1 FE84-bit3	CPWM1L3 FE82-bit7	CPWM1L2 FE82-bit6	CPWM1L1,0 FE82-bit5,4
HI-Z	0	-	0	-
LOW	0	0	1	0, 0
HIGH	0	1	1	0, 0

### 3.10.4.5 VCPWM1 compare register H (VCPWM1H)

- 1) The VCPWM1 compare register H controls the fundamental pulse width of VCPWM1. Fundamental pulse width = (Value represented by CPWM1H7 to CPWM1H0)  $\times \frac{1}{2}$  Tcyc
- 2) When bits 7 to 4 of VCPWM1L are all fixed at "0," VCPWM1 can serve as period-programmable 8-bit PWM that is controlled by VCPWM1H.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE53	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWM1H	CPWM1H7	CPWM1H6	CPWM1H5	CPWM1H4	CPWM1H3	CPWM1H2	CPWM1H1	CPWM1H0



PWML=00F

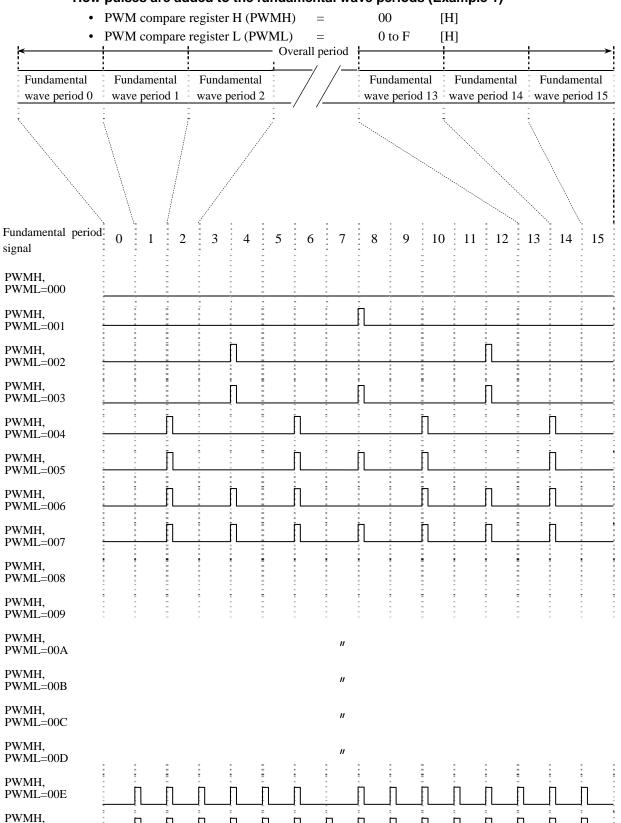
### The 12-bit PWM has the following waveform structure:

- The overall period consists of 16 fundamental wave periods.
- A fundamental wave period is represented by an 8-bit PWM. (PWM compare register H) (PWMH)
- 4 bits are used to designate the fundamental wave period to which additional pulses are to be added. (PWM compare register L) (PWML)

12-bit register structure

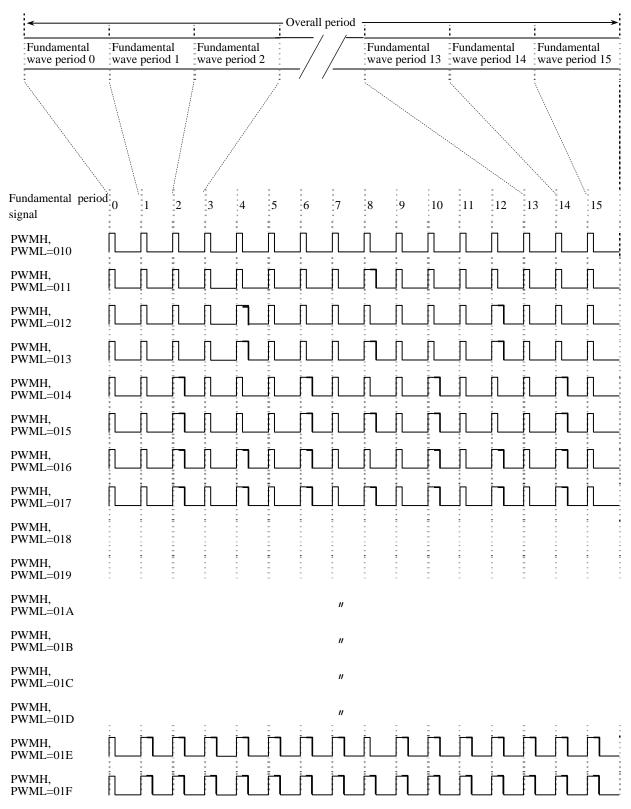
(PWMH), (PWML) = XXXX XXXX, XXXX (12BIT)

### How pulses are added to the fundamental wave periods (Example 1)



### How pulses are added to fundamental wave periods

- PWM compare register H (PWMH) = 01 [H]
- PWM compare register L (PWML) = 0 to F [H]



The fundamental wave period is variable within the range of  $\frac{(16 \text{ to } 256)}{3}$  Tcyc.

Fundamental wave period = (Value represented by CPWM0C7 to CPWM0C4 + 1)  $\times \frac{16}{3}$  Tcyc

- The overall period can be changed by changing the fundamental wave period.
- The overall period is made up of 16 fundamental wave periods.

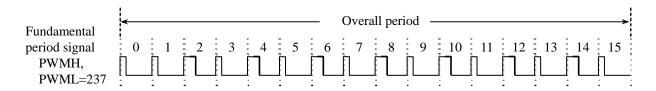
### **VCPWM**

### **Examples:**

Wave comparison when the 12-bit PWM contains 237[H].

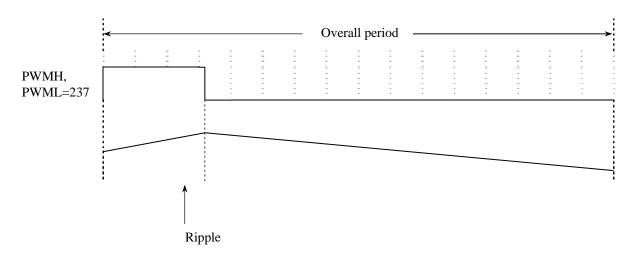
12-bit register configuration (PWMH), (PWML) = 237[H]

### 1 . Pulse added system (this series)



### 2 . Ordinary system

Since the ripple component of the integral output in this system is greater than that of the pulse added system as seen from the figure below, the pulse added system is considered better for motor-controlling uses.



### 3.10.4.6 VCPWM01 port input register (VCPWM01P)

- 1) This register controls the waveform and the output buffer of VCPWM0.
- 2) This register controls the waveform and the output buffer of VCPWM1.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE85	HHH0 0000	R/W	VCPWM01P	-	-	-	CPWM01P2	CPWM1ECK	CPWM0ECK	FIX0	FIX0

(bits 7 to 5): Does not exist; always read as 1.

CPWM01P2 (bit 4): Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

## CPWM1ECK (bit 3):

When this bit is set to 1, VCPWM1 generates waveform of (the PWM waves and the system clock).

## CPWM0ECK (bit 2):

When this bit is set to 1, VCPWM0 generates waveform of (the PWM waves and the system clock).

(bits 1 to 0): Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

## 3.11 High-speed PWM2 (HPWM2)

### 3.11.1 Overview

This series of microcontrollers incorporates high-speed 8-/12-bit PWM, named HPWM2. HPWM2 is made up of a PWM generator circuit that generates multifrequency 8-bit fundamental PWM waves and a 2-bit additional pulse generator.

### 3.11.2 Functions

High-speed 8-bit fundamental PWM mode

HPWM2 operates as an 8-bit PWM by a PWM generator circuit that generates multifrequency 8-bit fundamental PWM waves

- Fundamental wave period = 256 x (period set by HPWM2AC, bits 6 to 5)
- High-level pulse width = (data of HPWM2AH + 1) x (period set by HPWM2AC, bit6 to 5)

High-speed 10-bit fundamental + Additional pulse PWM mode

HPWM2 operates as a 10-bit PWM by a PWM generator circuit that generates multifrequency 8-bit fundamental PWM waves and a 2-bit additional pulse generator.(Note1)

- Fundamental wave period = 256 x (period set by HPWM2AC, bits 6 to 5)
- Overall period = Fundamental wave period × 4
- High-level pulse width = [HPWM2AH, HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6] x (period set by HPWM2AC, bit6 to 5)

### Interrupt generation

• Interrupt request to vector address 0033H is generated at the intervals equal to the fundamental PWM period(8-bit mode) or the overall PWM period(10-bit mode) if the interrupt request enable bit is set

To control high-speed PWM2(HPWM2), it is necessary to manipulate the following special function registers:

• HPWM2AC, HPWM2AL, HPWM2AH, P1, P1DDR, P1FCR

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE8D	0000 0000	R/W	HPWM2AC	H2A40MON	H2ACKDV	H2ACKSL	H2ABWSL	H2ARUN	H2ARLBSY	H2AOVF	H2AIE
FE8E	00HH HH00	R/W	HPWM2AL	HPWM2AL1	HPWM2AL0	-	-	-	-	P17H2ASL	P16H2ASL
FE8F	0000 0000	R/W	HPWM2AH	HPWM2AH7	HPWM2AH6	HPWM2AH5	HPWM2AH4	HPWM2AH3	HPWM2AH2	HPWM2AH1	HPWM2AH0

Note1: When HPWM2 is not operating, HPWM2 output is fixed to high level.

When HPWM2 is operating as the 8-bit PWM mode and the data of HPWM2AH is FFH, HPWM2 output is fixed to high level.

When HPWM2 is operating as the 10-bit PWM mode and the data of [HPWM2AH, HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6] is 000H, HPWM2 output is fixed to low level.

### 3.11.3 Circuit Configuration

#### 3.11.3.1 HPWM2 control register (HPWM2AC) (8-bit register)

- 1) The HPWM2 control register controls the operation of the internal high-speed RC and the operation and interrupts of HPWM2.
- 2) H2ARLBSY(HPWM2AC, bit2) is read only bit.

### 3.11.3.2 HPWM2 compare register L (HPWM2AL) (4-bit register)

The HPWM2 compare register L controls the additional pulses of HPWM2 and the function outputs of P17 and P16.

### 3.11.3.3 HPWM2 compare register H (HPWM2AH) (8-bit register)

The HPWM2 compare register H controls the fundamental pulse width of HPWM2.

### 3.11.3.4 HPWM2 compare data buffer register (HPWM2BR) (10-bit buffer register)

The HPWM2 compare data buffer register is used to store the setting data of the puls width of HPWM2. The data of [HPWM2AH, HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6] is stored to this register.

The update of the buffer register is carried out as follows.

- When HPWM2 is not operating(H2ARUN = 0), the data of HPWM2BR will be equal to the data of [HPWM2AH, HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6].
- •When HPWM2 is operating(H2ARUN=1), when HPWM2AH is written, reload-wait-flag (H2ARLBSY) is set and writing to HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6 and HPWM2AH is inhibited. In this state, when an overflow signal of the next PWM period(fundamenta period at 8-bit PWM mode, overall period at 10-bit mode) is generated, the data of [HPWM2AH, HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6] is reloaded to HPWM2BR, and H2ARLBSY is cleared.(Note 2)

Note2: HPWM2AH must be written finally in the data update process of the program because writing to HPWM2AH is the trigger of reload operation.

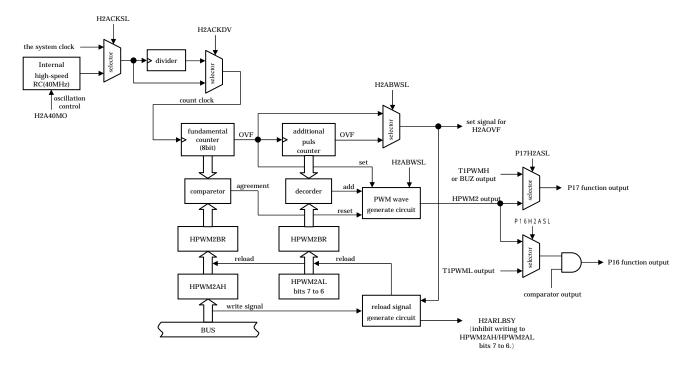


Figure 3.11.1 HPWM2 Block Diagram

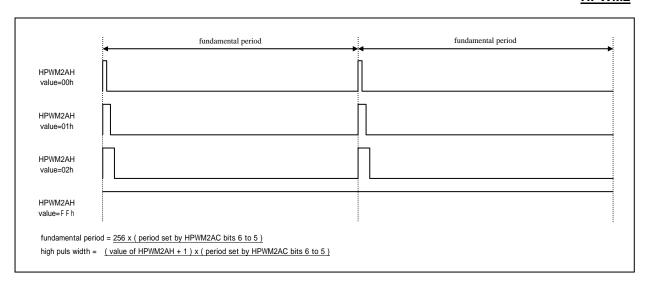


Figure 3.11.2 Examples of waveform of the 8-bit PWM mode(H2ABWSL=0)

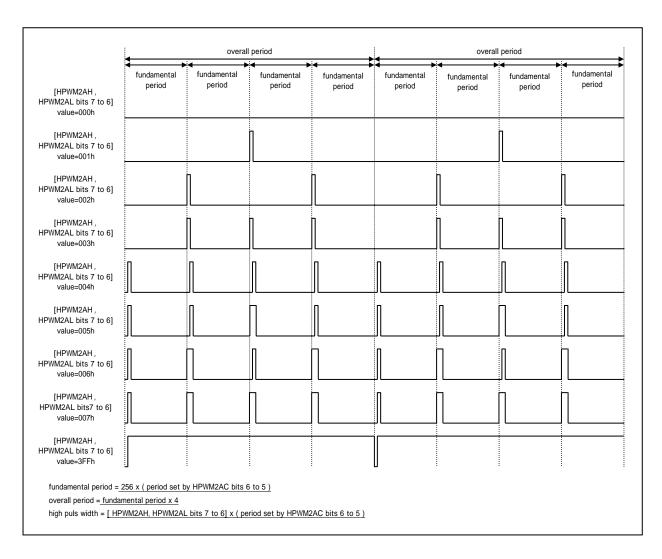


Figure 3.11.3 Examples of waveform of the 10-bit PWM mode(H2ABWSL=1)

### 3.11.4 Related Registers

#### 3.11.4.1 HPWM2 control register (HPWM2AC)

- 1) The HPWM2 control register controls the operation of the internal high-speed RC and the operation and interrupts of HPWM2.
- 2) H2ARLBSY(HPWM2AC, bit2) is read only bit.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE8D	0000 0000	R/W	HPWM2AC	H2A40MON	H2ACKDV	H2ACKSL	H2ABWSL	H2ARUN	H2ARLBSY	H2AOVF	H2AIE

### H2A40MON (bit 7): Internal high-sped RC(40MHz) oscillation control

- Setting this bit to 0 stops the oscillation of the internal high-speed RC(40MHz) oscillator circuit.
- Setting this bit to 1 starts the oscillation of the internal high-speed RC(40MHz) oscillator circuit.

### H2ACKDV (bit 6): HPWM2 clock divider control

- When this bit is set to 1, the 1/1 division of the clock selected by H2ACKSL is used.
- When this bit is set to 0, the 1/2 division of the clock selected by H2ACKSL is used.

### H2ACKSL (bit 5): HPWM2 clock select

H2ACKSL	HPWM2 clock
0	Internal high-speed RC(40MHz)
1	System-clock (fSCLK)

### H2ABWSL (bit 4): HPWM2 resolution select

H2ABWSL	HPWM2 resolution
0	8-bit ( fundamental )
1	10-bit ( fundamental + additional pulse )

### H2ARUN (bit 3): HPWM2 operation control

- Setting this bit to 0 stops the operation of HPWM2.
- Setting this bit to 1 starts the operation of HPWM2.

#### H2ARLBSY (bit 2): HPWM2 reload wait flag

When HPWM2 is operating(H2ARUN=1), when HPWM2AH is written, reload-wait-flag (H2ARLBSY) is set and writing to HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6 and HPWM2AH is inhibited.

The conditions required to clear H2ARLBSY are:

- 1) When HPWM2 is not operationg(H2ARUN=0).
- 2) When an overflow signal of the next PWM period(fundamenta period at 8-bit PWM mode, overall period at 10-bit mode) is generated.

### H2AOVF (bit 1): HPWM2 period overflow flag

When HPWM2 is operating(H2ARUN=1), this bit is set whenever an overflow signal of the PWM period(fundamenta period at 8-bit PWM mode, overall period at 10-bit mode) is generated. This bit must be cleared with an instruction.

#### H2AIE (bit 0): HPWM2 interrupt request enable

When this bit and H2AOVF are set to 1, an interrupt request to vector address 0033H are generated.

#### Note:

•When the internal high-speed RC(40MHz) is used for HPWM2 operation, an oscillation stabilization time of about 10 uS after an oscillation start (H2A40MON=0(oscillation stop) ---> 1(oscillation start)) is required before HPWM2 starts operation.

•When the internal high-speed RC(40MHz) is operating, about an operating current of several mA is always flowing in the IC.

If it is required to reduce a current at the stanby mode, the oscillation must be stopped (H2A40MON=0) before standby mode is entered

### 3.11.4.2 HPWM2 compare register L (HPWM2AL)

1) The HPWM2 compare register L controls the additional pulses of HPWM2 and the function outputs of P17 and P16.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE8E	00HH HH00	R/W	HPWM2AL	HPWM2AL1	HPWM2AL0	-	-	-	-	P17H2ASL	P16H2ASL

### P17H2ASL (bit 1): P17 function output control

• This bit and BUZON(ISL bit3) select the data transferred to P17 from the buzzer, timer 1 PWMH and HPWM2 output.

Note: It is also required for the function output from P17 to setup P17(P1 bit7), P17DDR(P1DDR bit7) and P17FCR(P1FCR bit7).

P17H2ASL (HPWM2AL bit1)	BUZON (ISL bit3)	P17 function output
0	0	Timer1 PWMH output
0	1	Basetimer BUZ output
1	-	HPWM2 output

### P16H2ASL (bit 0): P16 function output control

- When this bit is set to 0, (AND of timer 1 PWML and the comparator output) is transferred to P16.
- When this bit is set to 1, (AND of HPWM2 and the comparator output) is transferred to P16.

Note: The comparator output is fixed to high level when CPON(VRCNT, bit5) is set to 0.

• It is also required for the function output from P16 to setup P16(P1 bit6), P16DDR(P1DDR bit6) and P16FCR(P1FCR bit6).

#### 3.11.4.3 HPWM2 compare register H (HPWM2AH)

1) The HPWM2 compare register H controls the fundamental pulse width of HPWM2.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE8F	0000 0000	R/W	HPWM2AH	HPWM2AH7	HPWM2AH6	HPWM2AH5	HPWM2AH4	HPWM2AH3	HPWM2AH2	HPWM2AH1	HPWM2AH0

The PWM period and high-level pulse witdth are set by HPWM2AH and HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6.as following.

#### < 8-bit PWM mode (H2ABWSL=0) >

- Fundamental wave period = 256 x (period set by HPWM2AC, bits 6 to 5)
- High-level pulse width = (data of HPWM2AH + 1) x (period set by HPWM2AC, bit6 to 5)

#### < 10-bit PWM mode (H2ABWSL=1) >

- Fundamental wave period = 256 x (period set by HPWM2AC, bits 6 to 5)
- Overall period = Fundamental wave period × 4
- High-level pulse width = [HPWM2AH, HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6] x (period set by HPWM2AC, bit6 to 5)

### LC870G00 Chapter 3

Note: When HPWM2 is operating in 8-bit PWM mode, setting of HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6 doesn't affect HPWM2 operation.

See "3.11.3.4 HPWM2 compare data buffer register" for the detail reload operation of the compare data (HPWM2AH, HPWM2AL bits 7 to 6).

## 3.12 Temperature sensor (TEMPS)

#### 3.12.1 Overview

This series of microcontrollers incorporates a simplified temperature sensor and microcontrollers can detect temperature changes using this sensor.

- 1) The output voltage level of the sensor varies according to temperature
- 2) The output voltage level of the senser can be monitored by the AD converter.
- 3) The result of AD conversion of a reference output voltage level of the sensor has been stored in SFR before shipment/sorting of ICs.

#### 3.12.2 Functions

- 1) Temperature sensor function
- The output voltage level of the sensor varies linearly according to temperature.
- The lower tenperature is, the higher the output voltage level of the sensor is.
- (low-temperature room-temperature low-temperature)
- The output of the sensor is connected to the AD converter input, so a temperature can be monitored by the AD conversion of the output voltage level of the sensor.
- 2) Reference to reference voltage level of the temperature sensor

The result of AD conversion of the reference output voltage level of the sensor at about 60 has been stored in SFR before shipment/sorting of this series of microcontrollers, and it can be referred by program.

- 3) To control temperature sensor, it is necessary to manipulate the following special function registers:
  - TEMPS2CNT, ADCRC, ADMRC, ADRLC, ADRHC
  - D2TL, D2TH, D4TL, D4TH

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEDA	00HH HH00	R/W	TEMPS2CNT	TEMPS2ON	FIX0	-	-	-	-	DIO2X	FIX0
FEE0	XXXX XXXX	R/W	D2TL	D2TL7	D2TL6	D2TL5	D2TL4	D2TL3	D2TL2	D2TL1	D2TL0
FEE1	0000 xxxx	R/W	D2TH	D2TH7	D2TH6	D2TH5	D2TH4	D2TH3	D2TH2	D2TH1	D2TH0
FEE2	XXXX XXXX	R/W	D4TL	D4TL7	D4TL6	D4TL5	D4TL4	D4TL3	D4TL2	D4TL1	D4TL0
FEE3	0000 xxxx	R/W	D4TH	D4TH7	D4TH6	D4TH5	D4TH4	D4TH3	D4TH2	D4TH1	D4TH0

### 3.12.3 Circuit Configuration

#### 3.12.3.1 Temperature sensor control register (TEMPS2CNT) (8-bit register)

The temperature sensor control register controls the operation of the temperature sensor.

### 3.12.3.2 Temperature sensor 60 2-diodes reference register L (D2TL) (8-bit register)

The lower 8-bit of the result of 12-bit AD conversion(VREF2.0V) of the reference output voltage level of the sensor(2-diodes) at about 60 is stored in this register.

### 3.12.3.3 Temperature sensor 60 2-diodes reference register H (D2TH) (8-bit register)

The upper 4-bit of the result of 12-bit AD conversion(VREF2.0V) of the reference output voltage level of the sensor(2-diodes) at about 60 is stored in this register.

## 3.12.3.4 Temperature sensor 60 4-diodes reference register L (D4TL) (8-bit register)

The lower 8-bit of the result of 12-bit AD conversion(VREF4.0V) of the reference output voltage level of the sensor(4-diodes) at about 60 is stored in this register.

### 3.12.3.5 Temperature sensor 60 4-diodes reference register H (D4TH) (8-bit register)

The upper 4-bit of the result of 12-bit AD conversion(VREF4.0V) of the reference output voltage level of the sensor(4-diodes) at about 60 is stored in this register.

### 3.12.3.6 Temperature sensor

This is a temperature sensor whose output voltage level varies according to temperature.

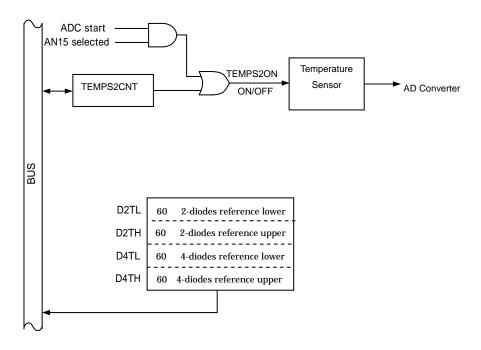


Figure 3.12.1 Temperature Sensor Block Diagram

### 3.12.4 Related Registers

#### 3.12.4.1 Temperature sensor control register (TEMPS2CNT)

The temperature sensor control register controls the operation of the temperature sensor.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEDA	00HH HH00	R/W	TEMPS2CNT	TEMPS2ON	FIX0	-	-	-	-	DIO2X	FIX0

### TEMPS2ON (bit 7): Temperature sensor operation control (manual)

- Setting this bit to 0 stops the operation of the temperature sensor.
- Setting this bit to 1 starts the operation of the temperature sensor.

Note: When AN15 is selected as AD converter input and AD conversion starts, the operation of the temperature sensor is turned on automatically.

And when AD conversion ends, the operation of the temperature sensor is turned off automatically.

### (bit 6): Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

### DIO2X (bit 1): Temperature sensor diode number of row select

- When this bit is set to 0, the temperature sensor is configured to 4-diodes mode.
- When this bit is set to 1, the temperature sensor is configured to 2-diodes mode.

### (bit 0): Test bit. Must always be set to 0.

Note: When the temperature sensor is operating(TEMPS2ON=1), about an operating current of several hundreds uA is always flowing in the IC.

In this state, when standby mode is entered, the temperature sensor keeps its operation.

If it is required to reduce a current at the stanby mode, the operation of the temperature sensor must be stopped (TEMPS2ON=0) before standby mode is entered

### 3.12.4.2 Temperature sensor 60 2-diodes reference register L (D2TL) (8-bit register)

The lower 8-bit of the result of 12-bit AD conversion(VREF2.0V) of the reference output voltage level of the sensor(2-diodes) at about 60 is stored in this register.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEE0	XXXX XXXX	R/W	D2TL	D2TL7	D2TL6	D2TL5	D2TL4	D2TL3	D2TL2	D2TL1	D2TL0

#### 3.12.4.3 Temperature sensor 60 2-diodes reference register H (D2TH) (8-bit register)

The upper 4-bit of the result of 12-bit AD conversion(VREF2.0V) of the reference output voltage level of the sensor(2-diodes) at about 60 is stored in this register.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEE1	0000 xxxx	R/W	D2TH	D2TH7	D2TH6	D2TH5	D2TH4	D2TH3	D2TH2	D2TH1	D2TH0

### 3.12.4.4 Temperature sensor 60 4-diodes reference register L (D4TL) (8-bit register)

The lower 8-bit of the result of 12-bit AD conversion(VREF4.0V) of the reference output voltage level of the sensor(4-diodes) at about 60 is stored in this register.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEE2	XXXX XXXX	R/W	D4TL	D4TL7	D4TL6	D4TL5	D4TL4	D4TL3	D4TL2	D4TL1	D4TL0

### 3.12.4.5 Temperature sensor 60 4-diodes reference register H (D4TH) (8-bit register)

The upper 4-bit of the result of 12-bit AD conversion(VREF4.0V) of the reference output voltage level of the sensor(4-diodes) at about 60 is stored in this register.

Address	Initial Value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEE3	0000 xxxx	R/W	D4TH	D4TH7	D4TH6	D4TH5	D4TH4	D4TH3	D4TH2	D4TH1	D4TH0

## 3.12.5 Example of Using Temperature sensor

- 1) Setting of the temperature sensor
- Write 80h to TEMPS2CNT, and the operation of temperature sensor starts.

If the automatic turning on/off function of the temperature sensor is used, this writing is not necessary.

- 2) Setting of the AD converter
- •Write to ADMRC and ADRLC, setup the appropriate AD conversion time.
- •Write F4h/F5h(Interrupt request enable/disable) to ADCRC, connect the output of the temperature sensor to the input of AD conveter, start AD conversion.
- 3) Detection of the temperaturer
- •After the end of AD conversion, calculate the temperature value using the AD conversion data in ADRLC, ADRHC and the reference temperature sensor data at 60 stored in (D2TL, D2TH, D4TL, D4TH).

## 4. Control Functions

## 4.1 Interrupt Function

#### 4.1.1 Overview

This series of microcontrollers has the capabilities to control three levels of multiple interrupts, i.e., low level (L), high level (H), and highest level (X). The master interrupt enable resister and interrupt priority control register are used and enable or disable interrupts and determine the priority of interrupts.

### 4.1.2 Functions

- 1) Interrupt processing
  - Peripheral modules generate an interrupt request to the predetermined vector address when the interrupt request and interrupt request enable flags are set to 1.
  - When the microcontroller receives an interrupt request from a peripheral module, it determines the level, priority and interrupt enable status of the interrupt. If the interrupt request is legitimate for processing, the microcontroller saves the value of PC in the stack and causes a branch to the predetermined vector address.
  - The return from the interrupt routine is accomplished by the RETI instruction, which restores the old state of the PC and interrupt level.

### 2) Multilevel interrupt control

• The interrupt function supports three levels of interrupts, that is, the low level (L), high level (H), and highest level (X). The interrupt function will not accept any interrupt requests of the same level or lower than that of the interrupt that is currently being processed.

#### 3) Interrupt priority

When interrupt requests to two or more vector addresses occur at the same time, the interrupt
request of the highest level takes precedence over the other interrupt requests. Among the
interrupt requests of the same level, the one whose vector address is the smallest is prioritary.

#### 4) Interrupt request enable control

- The master interrupt enable register can be used to control the enabling/disabling of H- and L-level interrupt requests.
- Interrupt requests of the X level cannot be disabled.

### 5) Interrupt disable period

- Interrupts are held disabled for a period of 2Tcyc after a write operation is performed to the IE (FE08H) or IP (FE09H) register, or the HOLD mode is released.
- No interrupt can occur during the interval between the execution of an instruction that loads the PCON (FE07H) register and the execution of the next instruction.
- No interrupt can occur during the interval between the execution of a RETI instruction and the execution of the next instruction.

### **Interrupt**

- 6) Interrupt level control
  - Interrupt levels can be selected on a vector address basis.

**Table of Interrupts** 

No.	Vector Address	Selectable Level	Interrupt Sources
1	00003H	X or L	INT0
2	0000BH	X or L	INT1
3	00013H	H or L	INT2/ T0L /INT4
4	0001BH	H or L	INT3/Base timer
5	00023H	H or L	ТОН
6	0002BH	H or L	T1L/T1H
7	00033H	H or L	HPWM2A
8	0003BH	H or L	SIO1
9	00043H	H or L	ADC
10	0004BH	H or L	Port0/VCPWM

- Priority levels: X > H > L
- Of interrupts of the same level, the one with the smallest vector address takes precedence.
- 7) To enable interrupts and to specify their priority, it is necessary to manipulate the following special function registers:
  - IE, IP

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE08	0000 HH00	R/W	IE	IE7	XFLG	HFLG	LFLG	-	-	XCNT1	XCNT0
FE09	0000 0000	R/W	IP	IP4B	IP43	IP3B	IP33	IP2B	IP23	IP1B	IP13

## 4.1.3 Circuit Configuration

### 4.1.3.1 Master interrupt enable control register (IE) (6-bit register)

- 1) The master interrupt enable control registers enables and disables H- and L-level interrupts.
- 2) The interrupt level flag of the register can be read.
- 3) The register selects the level (L or X) of interrupts to vector addresses 00003H and 0000BH.

### 4.1.3.2 Interrupt priority control register (IP) (8-bit register)

1) The interrupt priority control register selects the level (H or L) of interrupts to vector addresses 00013H to 0004BH.

## 4.1.4 Related Registers

#### 4.1.4.1 Master interrupt enable control register (IE)

1) The master interrupt enable control register is a 6-bit register for controlling the interrupts. Bits 6 to 4 of this register are read only.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE08	0000 HH00	R/W	ΙE	IE7	XFLG	HFLG	LFLG	-	-	XCNT1	XCNT0

### IE7 (bit 7): H-/L-level interrupt enables/disables control

- A 1 in this bit enables H- and L-level interrupt requests to be accepted.
- A 0 in this bit disables H- and L-level interrupt requests to be accepted.
- X-level interrupt requests are always enabled regardless of the state of this bit.

### XFLG (bit 6): X-level interrupt flag (R/O)

- This bit is set when an X-level interrupt is accepted and reset when execution returns from the processing of the X-level interrupt.
- This bit is read only. No instruction can rewrite the value of this bit directly.

### HFLG (bit 5): H-level interrupt flag (R/O)

- This bit is set when an H-level interrupt is accepted and reset when execution returns from the processing of the H-level interrupt.
- This bit is read only. No instruction can rewrite the value of this bit directly.

### LFLG (bit 4): L-level interrupt flag (R/O)

- This bit is set when an L-level interrupt is accepted and reset when execution returns from the processing of the L-level interrupt.
- This bit is read only. No instruction can rewrite the value of this bit directly.

### (Bits 3, 2): These bits do not exist. They are always read as "1."

### XCNT1 (bit 1): 0000BH Interrupt level control flag

- A 1 in this bit sets all interrupts to vector address 0000BH to the L-level.
- A 0 in this bit sets all interrupts to vector address 0000BH to the X-level.

### XCNT0 (bit 0): 00003H Interrupt level control flag

- A 1 in this bit sets all interrupts to vector address 00003H to the L-level.
- A 0 in this bit sets all interrupts to vector address 00003H to the X-level.

## **Interrupt**

### 4.1.4.2 Interrupt priority control register (IP)

1) The interrupt priority control register is an 8-bit register that selects the interrupt level (H/L) of interrupts to vector addresses 00013H to 0004BH.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE09	0000 0000	R/W	IP	IP4B	IP43	IP3B	IP33	IP2B	IP23	IP1B	IP13

	Interrupt Vector Address	IP Bit	Value	Interrupt Level
7	0004BH	IP4B	0	L
			1	Н
6	00043H	IP43	0	L
			1	Н
5	0003BH	IP3B	0	L
			1	Н
4	00033H	IP33	0	L
			1	Н
3	0002BH	IP2B	0	L
			1	Н
2	00023H	IP23	0	L
			1	Н
1	0001BH	IP1B	0	L
			1	Н
0	00013H	IP13	0	L
			1	Н

## 4.2 System Clock Generator Function

#### 4.2.1 Overview

This series of microcontrollers incorporates five systems of oscillator circuits, i.e., the main clock oscillator, subclock oscillator, low-, medium-, and high-speed RC oscillators as system clock generator circuits. The low-, medium-, and high-speed RC oscillator circuits have built-in resistors and capacitors, so that no external circuits are required.

The system clock can be selected from these five types of clock sources under program control.

### 4.2.2 Functions

- 1) System clock select
  - Allows the system clock to be selected under program control from five types of clocks generated by the main clock oscillator, subclock oscillator, low-, medium, and high-speed RC oscillators.
- 2) System clock frequency division
  - Divides frequency of the oscillator clock selected as the system clock and supplies the resultant clock to the system as the system clock.
  - The frequency divider circuit is made up of two stages:

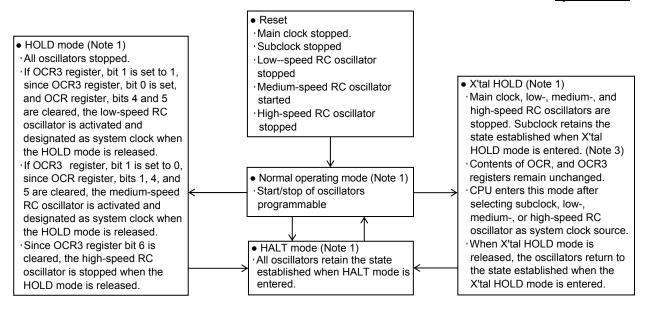
The first stage allows the selection of division ratios of  $\frac{1}{1}$  and  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The second stage allows the selection of division ratios of  $\frac{1}{1}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{8}$ ,  $\frac{1}{16}$ ,  $\frac{1}{32}$ ,  $\frac{1}{64}$ , and  $\frac{1}{128}$ .

- 3) Oscillator circuit control
  - Allows the start/stop control of the five systems of oscillators to be executed independently through microcontroller instructions. The main clock and subclock oscillator circuits share pins (CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2) and cannot be used at the same time.
- 4) Multiplexed input/output pin function
  - The CF oscillation/crystal oscillation pins (CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2) can also be used as general-purpose input/output ports.
- 5) Oscillator circuit states and operating modes

Mode/Clock	Main Clock	Sub clock	Low-speed RC Oscillator (Note 1)	Medium-speed RC Oscillator	High-speed RC Oscillator	System Clock
Reset	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped	Running	Stopped	Medium-speed RC oscillator
Normal mode	Programmable	Programmable	Programmable	Programmable	Programmable	Programmable
HALT	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	State established at entry time
HOLD	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped
Immediately after exit from HOLD mode	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	Running (Note 2)	Running (Note 2)	Stopped	Low- or medium-speed RC oscillator
X'tal HOLD	Stopped	State established at entry time	Stopped (Note 3)	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped
Immediately after exit from X'tal HOLD mode	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	State established at entry time	State established at entry time

Note: See Section 4.3," Standby Function," for the procedures to enter and exit the microcontroller operating modes



- Note 1:The oscillation of the low-speed RC oscillator circuit is controlled directly by the watchdog timer. Its oscillation is also controlled in the standby mode. See Section 4.6, "Watchdog Timer," for details.
- Note 2: When the Hold mode is released, low-sped RC oscillator or medium-speed RC oscillator automatically resumes oscillation and is set to be the system clock according to the value of oscillation control register 3 (OCR3), bit 1 when the HOLD mode is entered.
- Note 3: If the X'tal HOLD mode is entered with the low-speed RC oscillator selected as the base timer input clock source, and the base timer has been started, the low-speed RC oscillator circuit retains the state that is established when the X'tal HOLD mode is entered.
- 6) To control the system clock, it is necessary to manipulate the following special function registers:

### • PCON, CLKDIV, OCR, XT2PC, OCR3

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE07	НННН Н000	R/W	PCON	-	-	-	-	-	XTIDLE	PDN	IDLE
FE0C	нннн нооо	R/W	CLKDIV	-	ı	ı	ı	ı	CLKDV2	CLKDV1	CLKDV0
FE0E	0000 XX00	R/W	OCR	CLKSGL	EXTOSC	CLKCB5	CLKCB4	XT2IN	XT1IN	RCSTOP	CFSTOP
FE43	HH00 0000	R/W	XT2PC	-	-	XT1DR	XT1DT	XTCFSEL	XT2CMOS	XT2DR	XT2DT
FE7C	0000 0000	R/W	OCR3	FRCSEL	FRCSTART	OCR3B5	OCR3B4	OCR3B3	FIX0	SRCSEL	SRCSTART

### 4.2.3 Circuit Configuration

#### 4.2.3.1 Main clock oscillator circuit

- 1) The main clock oscillator circuit gets ready for oscillation by connecting a ceramic oscillator and a capacitor to the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins and controlling the OCR and XT2PC registers.
- 2) The data at the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins can be read as bits 2 and 3 of the OCR register.
- 3) The general-purpose input configuration must be selected and the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins must be held high or low level when neither main nor subclock is to be used or they are not to be used as general-purpose input ports.

#### 4.2.3.2 Subclock oscillator circuit

- 1) The subclock oscillator circuit gets ready for oscillation by connecting a crystal oscillator (32.768 kHz standard), a capacitor, and a damping resistor to the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins and controlling the OCR and XT2PC registers.
- 2) The data at the CF2/XT2 pin can be read as bit 3 of the oscillation control register (OCR). The data at the CF1/XT1 pin is not read as bit 2 of the OCR register.
- 3) The general-purpose input configuration must be selected and the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins must be kept high or low level when neither main nor subclock is to be used or they are not to be used as general-purpose input ports.

### 4.2.3.3 Internal low-speed RC oscillator

- The low-speed RC oscillator oscillates according to the internal resistor and capacitor (at 30 kHz standard).
- 2) The internal low-speed RC oscillator serves as the system clock that is to be used for low-power, low-speed operation.

#### 4.2.3.4 Internal medium-speed RC oscillator

- 1) The medium-speed RC oscillator oscillates according to the internal resistor and capacitor (at 1 MHz standard).
- 2) The clock from the medium-speed RC oscillator is designated as the system clock after the reset state is released. After the HOLD mode is exited, the clock from the medium- or low-speed RC oscillator is designated as the system clock according to the value of oscillation control register 3 (OCR3), bit 1 when HOLD mode is entered.

### 4.2.3.5 Internal high-speed RC oscillator circuit

- 1) The high-speed RC oscillator circuit oscillates according to the internal resistor and capacitor.
- 2) The internal high-speed RC oscillator serves as the system clock that is used for high-speed operation.

#### 4.2.3.6 Power control register (PCON) (3-bit register)

1) The power control register specifies the operating mode (normal/HALT/HOLD/X'tal HOLD).

### 4.2.3.7 Oscillation control register (OCR) (8-bit register)

- 1) The oscillation control register controls the start/stop operations of the main clock, subclock, and medium-speed RC oscillator circuits.
- 2) This register selects the system clock.
- The register sets the division ratio of the oscillation clock to be used as the system clock to  $\frac{1}{1}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$ .
- 4) The data at the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins can be read as bits 2 and 3 of this register.

### 4.2.3.8 Oscillation control register 2 (XT2PC) (6-bit register)

- 1) The oscillation control register 2 controls the main clock oscillator circuit.
- 2) This register controls the general-purpose inputs/outputs at the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins.

#### 4.2.3.9 Oscillation control register 3 (OCR3) (8-bit register)

- 1) The oscillation control register 3 controls the start/stop operations of the low-speed/high-speed RC oscillator circuits.
- 2) This register controls the RC clock selector and the high-speed clock selector.

### 4.2.3.10 System clock division control register (CLKDIV) (3-bit register)

1) The system clock division control register controls the operation of the system clock divider circuit. The division ratios of  $\frac{1}{1}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{8}$ ,  $\frac{1}{16}$ ,  $\frac{1}{32}$ ,  $\frac{1}{64}$ , and  $\frac{1}{128}$  are allowed.

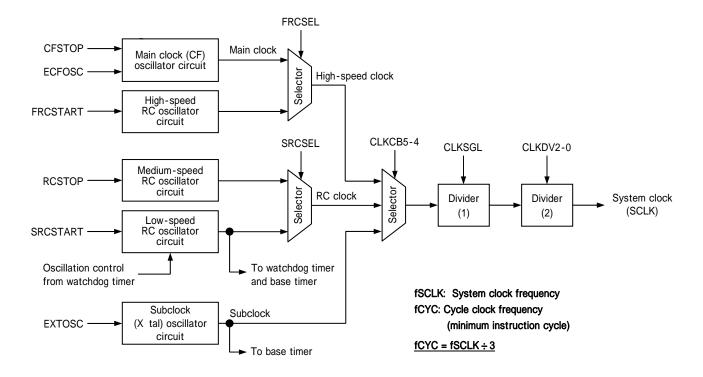


Figure 4.2.1 System Clock Generator Block Diagram

### 4.2.4 Related Registers

### 4.2.4.1 Power Control Register (PCON) (3-bit register)

1) The power control register is a 3-bit register used to specify the operating mode (normal/HALT/HOLD/X'tal HOLD).

See "4.3 Standby Function" for the procedures to enter and exit the microcontroller operating modes.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE07	НННН Н000	R/W	PCON	-	-	-	-	-	XTIDLE	PDN	IDLE

(bits 7to3): These bits do not exist. They are always read as 1.

XTIDLE (bit 2): X'tal HOLD mode setting flag

PDN (bit 1): HOLD mode setting flag

XTIDLE	PDN	Operating mode
_	0	Normal or HALT mode
0	1	HOLD mode
1	1	X'tal HOLD mode

- 1) These bits must be set with an instruction.
  - When the microcontroller enters the HOLD mode, all oscillations (main clock, subclock, low-/medium-/high-speed RC) are suspended and the related registers are placed in the states described below.

If OCR3 register, bit 1 is set to 1, OCR3 register, bit 0 is set and OCR register, bits 4 and 5 and OCR3 register, bit 6 are cleared.

If OCR3 register, bit 1 is set to 0, OCR register, bits 1, 4, and 5 and OCR3 register, bit 6 are cleared.

- When the microcontroller returns from the HOLD mode, according to the values of OCR and OCR3 registers, the low- or medium-speed RC oscillator starts operation and is designated as the system clock source. The main clock and subclock return to the states that were established before the microcontroller entered the HOLD mode. The high-speed RC oscillator is suspended.
- When the microcontroller enters the X'tal HOLD mode, all oscillations except subclock (i.e., main clock and low-/medium-/high-speed RC) are suspended, but the states of the OCR and OCR3 registers remain unchanged. If, however, the X'tal HOLD mode is entered with the low-speed RC oscillator selected as the base timer input clock source, and the base timer has been started, the low-speed RC oscillator circuit retains the state that is established when the X'tal HOLD mode is entered.
- When the microcontroller returns from the X'tal HOLD mode, the system clock to be used
  when the X'tal HOLD mode is entered needs to be set to either subclock or
  low-/medium-/high-speed RC because required oscillation stabilization time cannot be
  secured for the main clock.
- Since the X'tal HOLD mode is used usually for low-current clock counting, less current will be consumed if the system clock is switched to the subclock or low-speed RC and the main clock, and medium-/high-speed RC oscillators are suspended before the X'tal HOLD mode is entered.
- 2) XTIDLE must be cleared with an instruction.
- 3) PDN is cleared when a HOLD mode releasing signal (INT0, INT1, INT2, INT4, Port 0 interrupt, base timer interrupt, or CVD interrupt) or a reset occurs.
- 4) Bit 0 is automatically set when PDN is set.

IDLE (bit 0): HALT mode setting flag

- 1) Setting this bit places the microcontroller into the HALT mode.
- 2) This bit is automatically set whenever bit 1 is set.
- 3) This bit is cleared on acceptance of an interrupt request or on receipt of a reset signal.

Note: The oscillation of the low-speed RC oscillator circuit is controlled directly by the watchdog timer. Its oscillation is also controlled in the standby mode. See Section 4.6, "Watchdog Timer," for details.

### 4.2.4.2 Oscillation Control Register (OCR) (8-bit register)

1) The oscillation control register is an 8-bit register that selects the system clock division ratio, controls the operation of the oscillator circuits, selects the system clock, and reads data from the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins. Except for read-only bits 3 and 2, all bits of this register can be read or written.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE0E	0000 XX00	R/W	OCR	CLKSGL	EXTOSC	CLKCB5	CLKCB4	XT2IN	XT1IN	RCSTOP	CFSTOP

CLKSGL (bit 7): System clock division ratio select

- 1) When this bit is set to 1, the clock selected by bits 4 and 5 is used as the system clock as is.
- 2) When this bit is set to 0, the clock having a clock rate of  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the clock selected by bits 4 and 5 is used as the system clock.

#### EXTOSC (bit 6): CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 function control

- 1) When this bit and CFSTOP (bit 0) are set to 1, the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins serve as the pins for subclock oscillation and get ready for oscillation when a crystal oscillator (32.768 kHz standard), capacitors, and damping resistors are connected. When the OCR register is read in this case, bit 3 reads the data at the CF2/XT2 pin and bit 2 reads 0.
- 2) When this bit is set to 0 and XTCFSEL (XT2PC register, bit 3) is set to 1, the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins serve as the pins for main clock oscillation and get ready for oscillation when a ceramic oscillator, capacitors, feedback resistors, and damping resistors are connected. When the OCR register is read in this case, bit 3 reads the data at the CF2/ XT2 pin and bit 2 reads the data at the CF1/XT1 pin.

CLKCB5 (bit 5): System clock select

CLKCB4 (bit 4): System clock select

- 1) CLKCB5 and CLKCB4 are used to select the system clock.
- 2) CLKCB5 and CLKCB4 are cleared at reset time or when the HOLD mode is entered.

CLKCB5	CLKCB4	System clock
0	0	RC clock
0	1	High-speed clock
1	0	Subclock
1	1	High-speed clock

<sup>\*</sup> See Figure 4.2.1 for details.

XT2IN (bit 3): CF2/XT2 data (read-only) XT1IN (bit 2): CF1/XT1 data (read-only)

Data that can be read via XT2IN and XT1IN varies as shown in the table below according to the value of EXTOSC (bit 6).

EXTOSC	XT2IN	XT1IN
0	CF2/XT2 pin data	CF1/XT1 pin data
1	CF2/XT2 pin data	Read 0

RCSTOP (bit 1): Medium-speed RC oscillator circuit control

- 1) Setting this bit to 1 stops the oscillation of the medium-speed RC oscillator circuit.
- 2) Setting this bit to 0 starts the oscillation of the medium-speed RC oscillator circuit.
- 3) When a reset occurs, this bit is cleared and the RC oscillator circuit is enabled for oscillation.
- 4) When the microcontroller enters the HOLD mode, this bit is set as described below according to the value of bit 1 of the OCR3 register.
  - If OCR3 register, bit 1 is set to 0, this bit is cleared and the oscillator starts oscillation and the medium-speed RC oscillator is designated as the system clock source when the microcontroller exits the HOLD mode.
  - If OCR3 register, bit 1 is set to 1, the state of this bit remains unchanged.

CFSTOP (bit 0): CF oscillator circuit control

- 1) Setting this bit to 1 stops the CF oscillator circuit.
- 2) Setting this bit to 0 starts the CF oscillator circuit.
- 3) When a reset occurs, this bit and XT2PC register bit 6 are cleared and the CF1 and CF2 pins serve as the input pins.

OCR re	egister	XT2PC register	CF1/XT1 ,	OCR register			
EXTOSC	CFSTOP	XTCFSEL	CF2/XT2 state	XT2IN	XT1IN		
0	0	1	Main clock oscillator active	CF2/XT2 pin data	CF1/XT1 pin data		
0	1	1	Main clock oscillator stopped	CF2/XT2 pin data	CF1/XT1 pin data		
1	1	X	Subclock oscillator active	CF2/XT2 pin data	Read 0		
1	0	X	Inhibited	CF2/XT2 pin data	Read 0		
0	0	0	General-purpose input	CF2/XT2 pin data	CF1/XT1 pin data		
0	1	0	General-purpose input/output	CF2/XT2 pin data	CF1/XT1 pin data		

### 4.2.4.3 Oscillation Control Register 2 (XT2PC) (6-bit register)

1) The oscillation control register 2 is an 6-bit register that controls the operation of the oscillator circuits, controls the general-purpose outputs of CF1/XT1(N-channel open drain), CF2/XT2 pins, and reads data from the CF1 and CF2 pins.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE43	HH00 0000	R/W	XT2PC	-	-	XT1DR	XT1DT	XTCFSEL	XT2CMOS	XT2DR	XT2DT

#### XT1DR (bit 5): CF1/XT1 data direction

This bit controls the CF1/XT1 input/output direction when OCR register sets CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 to the general-purpose input/output mode

- 1) When this bit is set to 0, CF1/XT1 is set to the input mode.
- 2) When this bit is set to 1, CF1/XT1 is set to the output mode(N-channel open drain)

### XT1DT (bit 4): CF1/XT1 data latch

This bit controls the CF1/XT1 output data when OCR register sets CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 to the general-purpose input/output mode

Regist	er Data	CF1/XT1 State				
XT1DT	XT1DR	Input	Output			
0	0	Enabled	Open			
1	0	Enabled	Open			
0	1	Enabled	Low			
1	1	Enabled	Open			

<sup>\*</sup>When general-purpose input/output mode is selected. See Figure 4.2.4.2 Oscillation Control Register for details.

#### XTCFSEL (bit 3): CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 input control

This bit and EXTOSC (OCR register, bit 6) and CFSTOP (OCR register, bit 0) are used to select the function of the CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 pins between main clock, subclock, and general-purpose input/output port pins. (See 4.2.4.2, "Oscillation control register," for details.)

### XT2CMOS (bit 2): CF2/XT2 output mode

This bit controls the CF2/XT2 output mode when OCR register sets CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 to the general-purpose input/output mode and CF2/XT2 is set to the output mode(XT2DR=1).

- 1) When this bit is set to 0, CF2/XT2 output mode is set to N-channel open drain.
- 2) When this bit is set to 1, CF2/XT2 output mode is set to CMOS

### XT2DR (bit 1): CF2/XT2 data direction

This bit controls the CF2/XT2 input/output direction when OCR register sets CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 to the general-purpose input/output mode

- 1) When this bit is set to 0, CF2/XT2 is set to the input mode.
- 2) When this bit is set to 1, CF2/XT2 is set to the output mode

#### XT2DT (bit 0): CF2/XT2 data latch

This bit controls the CF2/XT2 output data when OCR register sets CF1/XT1 and CF2/XT2 to the general-purpose input/output mode

R	egister Dat	CF2/XT2 State			
XT2DT	XT2DR	XT2CMOS	Input	Output	
0	0	_	Enabled	Open	
1	0	_	Enabled	Open	
0	1	_	Enabled	Low	
1	1	0	Enabled	Open	
		1	Enabled	High	

<sup>\*</sup>When general-purpose input/output mode is selected. See Figure 4.2.4.2 Oscillation Control Register for details.

## 4.2.4.4 Oscillation Control Register 3 (OCR3) (8-bit register)

1) The oscillation control register 3 is an 8-bit register that controls the operation of the low-speed RCoscillator circuit and the high-speed RC oscillator circuit and selects the high-speed clock source and the RC clock source.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE7C	0000 0000	R/W	OCR3	FRCSEL	FRCSTART	OCR3B5	OCR3B4	OCR3B3	FIX0	SRCSEL	SRCSTART

#### FRCSEL (bit 7): High-speed clock select

- 1) When this bit is set to 0, the main clock is selected as the high-speed clock source.
- 2) When this bit is set to 1, the high-speed RC oscillator clock is selected as the high-speed clock source.

#### FRCSTART (bit 6): High-speed RC oscillator circuit control

- 1) Setting this bit to 0 stops the oscillation of the high-speed RC oscillator circuit.
- 2) Setting this bit to 1 starts the oscillation of the high-speed RC oscillator circuit.
- 3) When a reset occurs, this bit is cleared and the oscillator circuit is disabled for oscillation.
- 4) When the microcontroller enters the HOLD mode, this bit is cleared and the oscillator circuit is disabled for oscillation.

#### OCR3B5 to 3 (bits 5 to 3): General-purpose flags

These bits can be used as general-purpose flag bits.

Any manipulations of these bits exert no influence on the operation of this function block.

### SRCSEL (bit 1): RC clock select

- 1) When this bit is set to 0, the medium-speed RC oscillator clock is selected as the RC clock source.
- 2) When this bit is set to 1, the low-speed RC oscillator clock is selected as the RC clock source.
  - \* See Figure 4.2.1 for details.

### SRCSTART (bit 0): Low-speed RC oscillator circuit control

- 1) A 0 in this bit stops the low-speed RC oscillator circuit.
- 2) A 1 in this bit starts the low-speed RC oscillator circuit.
- 3) When a reset occurs, this bit is cleared and the oscillator circuit is disabled for oscillation.
- 4) When the microcontroller enters the HOLD mode, this bit is set as described below according to the value of SRCSEL.
  - If SRCSEL is set to 0, the state of this bit remains unchanged.
  - If SRCSEL is set to 1, this bit is set and the oscillator starts oscillation and the low-speed RC oscillator is designated as the system clock source when the microcontroller returns from the HOLD mode.

<sup>\*</sup> See Figure 4.2.1 for details.

## 4.2.4.5 System clock divider control register (CLKDIV) (3-bit register)

1) The system clock divider control register controls the frequency division processing of the system clock.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE0C	НННН Н000	R/W	CLKDIV	-	-	-	-	-	CLKDV2	CLKDV1	CLKDV0

(Bits 7 to 3): These bits do not exist. They are always read as 1.

CLKDV2 (bit 2):

CLKDV1 (bit 1): Define the division ratio of the system clock.

CLKDV0 (bit 0):

CLKDV2	CLKDV1	CLKDV0	Division Ratio
0	0	0	$\frac{1}{1}$
0	0	1	$\frac{1}{2}$
0	1	0	$\frac{1}{4}$
0	1	1	$\frac{1}{8}$
1	0	0	$\frac{1}{16}$
1	0	1	$\frac{1}{32}$
1	1	0	$\frac{1}{64}$
1	1	1	$\frac{1}{128}$

## 4.3 Standby Function

#### 4.3.1 Overview

This series of microcontrollers supports three standby modes, called the HALT, HOLD, and X'tal HOLD modes, that are used to reduce current consumption at power-failure time or in program standby mode. In a standby mode, the execution of all instructions is suspended.

### 4.3.2 Functions

- 1) HALT mode
  - The microcontroller suspends the execution of instructions but its peripheral circuits continue processing (certain serial transfer functions are stopped.) (Note 1)
  - The HALT mode is entered by setting bit 0 of the PCON register to 1.
  - Bit 0 of the PCON register is cleared and the microcontroller returns to the normal operating mode when a reset occurs or an interrupt request is accepted.

#### 2) HOLD mode

- All oscillations are suspended. The microcontroller suspends the execution of instructions and its peripheral circuits stop processing. (Notes 1, 2)
- The HOLD mode is entered by setting bit 1 of the PCON register to 1 when bit 2 is set to 0. In this case, bit 0 of the PCON register (HALT mode flag) is automatically set.
- When a reset occurs or a HOLD mode release signal (INT0, INT1, INT2, INT4 and port 0 interrupt) occurs, bit 1 of the PCON register is cleared and the microcontroller switches into the HALT mode.

#### 3) X'tal HOLD mode

- All clock oscillations except that of the subclock are stopped. (If, however, the base timer has
  been started with low-speed RC oscillation selected as the base timer input clock source, the
  low-speed RC oscillation circuit retains the state that is established when the X'tal HOLD
  mode is entered.) The execution of instructions and the operation of the peripheral circuits
  except the base timer are suspended (Notes 1 and 2).
- The X'tal HOLD mode is entered by setting bit 1 of the PCON register to 1 when bit 2 is set to 1. In this case, bit 0 of the PCON register (HALT mode flag) is automatically set.
- When a reset occurs or a HOLD mode release signal (INT0, INT1, INT2, INT4 and port 0 interrupt) occurs, bit 1 of the PCON register is cleared and the microcontroller switches into the HALT mode.
- Note 1: The oscillation of the low-speed RC oscillation circuit is controlled directly by the watchdog timer. Its oscillation is also controlled in the standby mode. See Section 4.6, "Watchdog Timer," for details
- Note 2: Do not allow the microcontroller to enter into the HOLD, or X'tal HOLD mode while AD conversion is in progress. Make sure that ADSTART (ADCRC register bit 2) is set to 0 before placing the microcontroller into one of the above-mentioned standby modes.

## **Standby**

# 4.3.3 Related Registers

## 4.3.3.1 Power Control Register (PCON) (3-bit register)

1) The power control register is a 3-bit register that specifies the operating mode (normal/HALT/ HOLD/X'tal HOLD).

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE07	НННН Н000	R/W	PCON	-	-	-	-	-	XTIDLE	PDN	IDLE

See 4.2.4.1 "Power control register (PCON)."

**Table 4.3.1 Standby Mode Operations** 

Reset State	HALT Mode	HOLD Mode	X'tal HOLD Mode
RES applied Reset by POR/LVD Reset from watchdog timer	• PCON register Bit 1 = 0 Bit 0 = 1	• PCON register Bit 2 = 0 Bit 1 = 1	• PCON register Bit 2 = 1 Bit 1 = 1
• Initialized as shown in separate table.  (When watchdog timer reset: WDTCNT register, bit 7 is set)	• WDTCNT, bit 5 is cleared if WDTCNT register, bit 4=0 and bit 3=1.	<ul> <li>WDTCNT register, bit 5 is cleared if WDTCNT register, bit 4=0 and bit 3=1.</li> <li>PCON register, bit 0 is set.</li> <li>OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.</li> <li>OCR register, bits 5, 4, and 1 are cleared if OCR3 register, bit 1=0.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>WDTCNT register, bit 5 is cleared if WDTCNT register, bit 4=0 and bit 3=1.</li> <li>PCON register, bit 0 is set.</li> </ul>
		• OCR3 register, bit 0 is set and OCR register, bits 5 and 4 are cleared if OCR3 register, bit 1=1.	
• Stopped	• State established at entry time	• Stopped	• Stopped
• Stopped	• State established at entry time	• Stopped	• State established at entry time
• Stopped	• State established at entry time (Note 1)	• Stopped (Note 1)	• Stopped (Notes 1, 2)
• Running	• State established at entry time	• Stopped	• Stopped
• Stopped	• State established at entry time	• Stopped	• Stopped
Initialized	• Stopped	• Stopped	• Stopped
• See Table 4.4.2.			
RES: Unpredictable     LVD: Unpredictable or data preserved (depends on supply voltage)      When watchdog timer reset: Data preserved	Data preserved	Data preserved	Data preserved
• Stopped	• State established at entry time	• Stopped	• State established at entry time
• Stopped	• State established at entry time (Note 3)	• Stopped	• Stopped
Entry conditions canceled.	Interrupt request accepted.     Reset/entry conditions established	<ul> <li>Interrupt request from INT0, INT1, INT2, INT4 and port 0.</li> <li>Reset/entry conditions established</li> </ul>	Interrupt request from INT0, INT1, INT2, INT4, port 0 and base timer.     Reset/entry conditions established
Normal mode	• Normal mode (Note 4)	• HALT (Note 4)	• HALT (Note 4)
• None	• PCON register, bit 0 is	• PCON register, bit 1 is	• PCON register, bit 1 is
	RES applied Reset by POR/LVD Reset from watchdog timer Initialized as shown in separate table. (When watchdog timer reset: WDTCNT register, bit 7 is set)  Stopped Stopped Running Running Initialized See Table 4.4.2. RES: Unpredictable or data preserved (depends on supply voltage) When watchdog timer reset: Data preserved Stopped The LVD: Unpredictable or data preserved Capends on supply voltage) When watchdog timer reset: Data preserved Stopped Tentry conditions canceled.	<ul> <li>RES applied</li> <li>Reset by POR/LVD</li> <li>Reset from watchdog timer</li> <li>Initialized as shown in separate table.</li> <li>(When watchdog timer reset: WDTCNT register, bit 7 is set)</li> <li>Stopped</li> <li>State established at entry time</li> <li>State established at entry time (Note 1)</li> <li>Running</li> <li>State established at entry time</li> <li>State established at entry time</li> <li>State established at entry time</li> <li>State established at entry time (Note 1)</li> <li>Running</li> <li>State established at entry time</li> <li>Stopped</li> <li>State established at entry time</li> <li>Stopped</li> <li>State established at entry time</li> <li>Data preserved</li> <li>See Table 4.4.2.</li> <li>RES: Unpredictable or data preserved (depends on supply voltage)</li> <li>When watchdog timer reset: Data preserved</li> <li>Stopped</li> <li>State established at entry time</li> <li>Stopped</li> <li>State established at entry time (Note 3)</li> <li>Interrupt request accepted.</li> <li>Reset/entry conditions established</li> <li>Reset/entry conditions established</li> <li>Normal mode</li> <li>Normal mode (Note 4)</li> </ul>	• RES applied         • PCON register Bit 1 = 0 Bit 1 = 0 Bit 1 = 1           • Reset by POR/LVD         • Reset from watchdog timer           • Initialized as shown in separate table. (When watchdog timer reset: WDTCNT register, bit 7 is set)         • WDTCNT, bit 5 is cleared if WDTCNT register, bit 4=0 and bit 3=1.           • PCON register bit 4=0 and bit 3=1.         • WDTCNT register, bit 4=0 and bit 3=1.           • PCON register, bit 5 is cleared if WDTCNT register, bit 7 is set)         • WDTCNT register, bit 5 is cleared if WDTCNT register, bit 4=0 and bit 3=1.           • PCON register, bit 5 is cleared if WDTCNT register, bit 4=0 and bit 3=1.         • PCON register, bit 5 is cleared if WDTCNT register, bit 6 is cleared.           • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.         • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.           • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.         • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.           • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.         • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.           • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.         • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.           • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.         • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.           • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.         • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared.           • OCR 3 register, bit 6 is cleared if OCR3 register, bit 6 is cleared.         • Stopped           • State established at entry time (Note 1)         • Stopped           • Stopped         • State established at entry time

- Note 1: The oscillation of the low-speed RC oscillation circuit is controlled directly by the watchdog timer. Its oscillation is also controlled in the standby mode. See Section 4.6, "Watchdog Timer," for details.
- Note 2: If the X'tal HOLD mode is entered with the low-speed RC oscillation selected as the base timer input clock source, and the base timer has been started, the low-speed RC oscillation circuit retains the state that is established when the X'tal HOLD mode is entered.
- Note 3: Certain serial transmission functions are stopped.
- Note4: The microcontroller switches into the reset state if it exits the current mode on the establishment of reset/entry conditions.

## **Standby**

Table 4.3.2 Pin States and Operating Modes (This Series)

Pin Name	Reset Time	Normal Mode	HALT Mode HOLD Mode		On Exit from HOLD	
RES	• I/O pin	←	←	←	←	
CF1/ XT1	Input pin     Oscillation not started	• CF oscillation inverter input/general-purpose input/output selected by bit 3 of register XT2PC (FE43H).	<b>←</b>	CF oscillation inverter input/general-purpose input is in the state established on entry into HOLD mode.	State established on entry into HOLD mode	
		Oscillation enabled or disabled by register OCR (FE0EH).				
	Feedback resistors for CF and XT are turned off.	• Feedback resistor between CF1 and CF2 controlled by a program.		• Feedback resistor between CF1 and CF2 is in the state established on entry into HOLD mode.		
CF2/ XT2	Input pin     Oscillation not started	CF oscillation inverter output/general-purpose input/output selected by bit 3 of register XT2PC (FE43H).	<b>←</b>	CF oscillation inverter output/general-purpose input is in the state established on entry into HOLD mode.	• State established on entry into HOLD mode	
		Oscillation enabled or disabled by register OCR (FE0EH).				
	Feedback resistors for CF and XT are turned off.	• Feedback resistor between CF1 and CF2 controlled by a program.		• Feedback resistor between CF1 and CF2 is in the state established on entry into HOLD mode.		
P00-P06	• Input mode • Pull-up resistor off	Input/output/pull-up resistor controlled by a program.	<b>←</b>	<b>←</b>	<b>←</b>	
P10-P17	<ul><li>Input mode</li><li>Pull-up resistor off</li></ul>	Input/output/pull-up resistor/constant current mode controlled by a program.	<b>←</b>	<b>←</b>	<b>←</b>	
P20-P27	• Input mode • Pull-up resistor off	• Input/output/pull-up resistor/constant current mode controlled by a program.				
P70	• Input mode • Pull-up resistor off	• Input/output/pull-up resistor controlled by a program.	• Input mode • Pull-up resistor off		Normal operating mode	

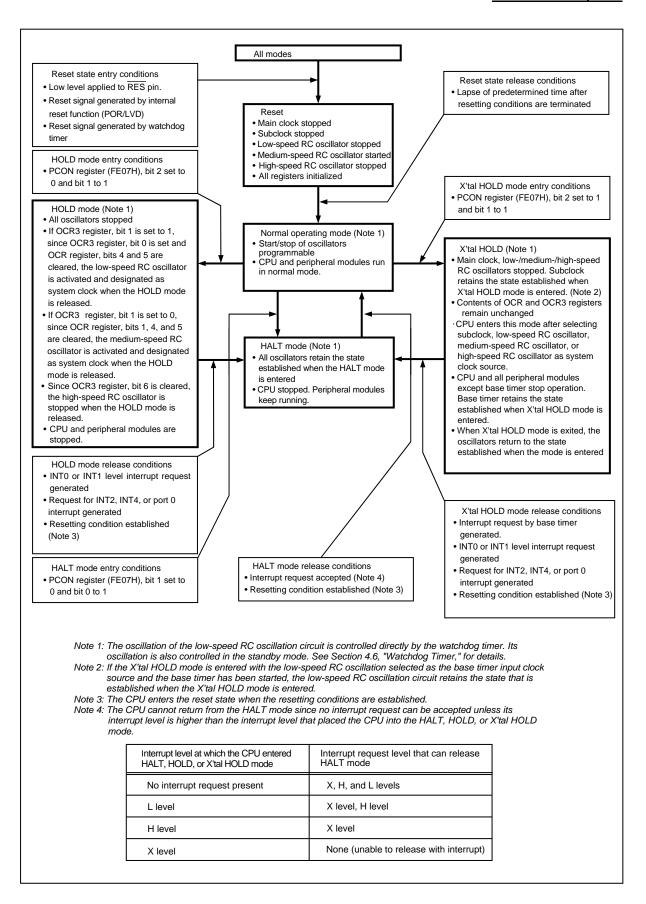


Figure 4.3.1 Standby Mode State Transition Diagram

## Watchdog timer

## 4.4 Reset Function

#### 4.4.1 Overview

The reset function initializes the microcontroller when it is powered on or while it is running.

### 4.4.2 Functions

This series of microcontrollers provides the following three types of resetting function:

- 1) External reset via the  $\overline{\text{RES}}$  pin
  - The microcontroller is reset without fail by applying and holding a low level to the RES pin for 200μs or longer. Note, however, that a low level of a small duration (less than 200μs) is likely to trigger a reset.
  - The RES pin pin can serve as a power-on reset pin when it is provided with an external time constant element.

### 2) Internal reset

- The internal reset function is available in two types: the power-on reset (POR) that triggers a reset when power is turned on and the low-voltage detection reset (LVD) that triggers a reset when the power voltage falls below a certain level.
- Options are available to set the power-on reset release level, to Enable (use) and Disable (disuse) the low-voltage detection reset function, and its threshold level.

### 3) Internal pull-up resistor

- Options are available to Enable(use) and Disable(disuse) the internal pull-up resistor for the RES pin.
- 4) Reset function using a watchdog timer
  - The watchdog timer of this series of microcontroller can be used to generate reset, by the internal low-speed RC oscillator or the subclock, at a predetermined time intervals.

An example of a resetting circuit is shown in Figure 4.4.1. The external circuit connected to the reset pin shows an example that the internal reset function is disabled and an external power-on reset circuit is configured.

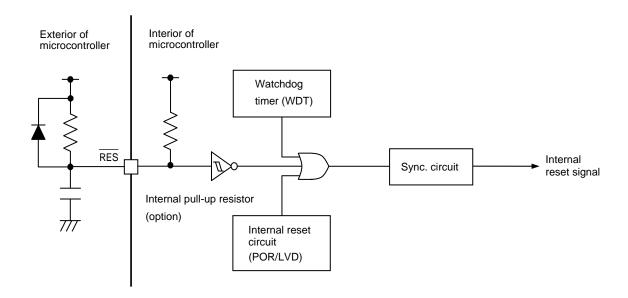


Figure 4.5.1 Sample Reset Circuit Block Diagram

## Reset

## 4.4.3 Reset State

When a reset is generated by the RES pin, internal reset circuit, or watchdog timer, the hardware functional blocks of the microcontroller are initialized by a reset signal that is in synchronization with the system clock.

Since the system clock is switched to the internal medium-speed RC oscillator when a reset occurs, hardware initialization is also carried out immediately even at power-on time. After the hardware reset if the main clock is to be used, enable the oscillation of the main clock and switch the system clock to the main clock after the oscillation gets stabilized. The program counter is initialized to 0000H on a reset. See Appendix (AI), 87 Register Map, for the initial values of the special function registers (SFR).

## <Notes and precautions>

- The stack pointer is initialized to 0000H.
- Data RAM is never initialized by a reset. Consequently, the contents of RAM are unpredictable at power-on time.
- When using the internal reset function, it is necessary to implement and connect an external circuit to the reset pin according to the user's operating environment. Be sure to review and observe the operating specifications, circuit configuration, precautions, and considerations discussed in section 4.7, "Internal Reset Function."

# 4.5 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

### 4.5.1 Overview

This series of microcontrollers is provided with a watchdog timer (WDT) that has the following features:

- 1) Can generate an internal reset signal on an overflow occurring on a timer which runs on either an internal low-speed RC oscillator clock or subclock.
- Three standby-mode-time operating modes (continue count operation, suspend operation, suspend count operation while retaining the count value).
  - \* The primary function of the watchdog timer is to detect program runaway conditions. The use of the watchdog timer is highly recommended to enhance system reliability.

### 4.5.2 Functions

- 1) Watchdog timer
  - A 17-bit up-counter (WDTCT) runs on the WDT clock (the clock source is selected from either
    internal low-speed RC oscillation clock or subclock). A WDT reset (internal reset) signal is
    generated when the overflow time (selected out of 8 time values) that is selected by the watchdog
    timer control register (WDTCNT) expires. At this moment, the WDT reset detection flag
    (WDTRSTF) is set. Since the WDTCT can be cleared by a program, it is necessary to code the
    program so that the WDTCT be cleared at regular intervals.
  - If the WDT operation is started with the internal low-speed RC oscillator clock selected as the WDT clock source, the internal low-speed RC oscillation circuit is controlled by both of the oscillation control register 3 (OCR3) and WDT. Since they control the oscillation independently of each other, even if the system clock happens to be suspended by a program runaway condition, the WDT continues operation, so that it is possible to detect the runaway condition.
  - If the WDT operation is started when the subclock is selected as the WDT clock, a WDT reset is
    generated on detection of subclock oscillation suspended by the XT function control bit
    (EXTOSC) of oscillation control register (OCR) or entry into the HOLD mode. In this case,
    WDTRSTF is set.
- 2) Standby mode time operations
  - The action that the WDT takes in the standby mode can be selected from three operating modes, i.e., "continue count operation," "suspend operation," and "suspend count operation while retaining the count value." If the internal low-speed RC oscillator clock is selected as the WDT clock source when the "continue count operation" is selected, an operating current of several μA is always flowing in the IC because the internal low-speed RC oscillation circuit is continuing oscillation. (For details, refer to the latest "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet.")
- 3) To control the watchdog timer (WDT), it is necessary to manipulate the following special function register:
  - WDTCNT

Addre	s Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE79	0000 0000	R/W	WDTCNT	WDTRSTF	WDTCKSL	WDTRUN	IDLOP1	IDLOP0	WDTSL2	WDTSL1	WDTSL0

# 4.5.3 Circuit Configuration

# 4.5.3.1 WDT control register (WDTCNT) (8-bit register)

1) The WDT control register is used to manipulate the WDT reset detection flag, to select operations in the standby-time mode, to select the overflow time, and to control the operation of WDT.

Note: The WDTCNT is initialized with "00H" when a low-level signal is applied to the external RES pin or a reset is triggered by the internal reset (POR/LVD) function. Bit 6 and bits 4 to 0 of the WDTCNT are not initialized, however, when a WDT-triggered reset occurs.

Note: The WDTCNT is disabled for writes once the WDT is started (WDTRUN set to 1). If the instruction "MOV #55H, WDTCNT" is executed in this case, the WDTCT is cleared and count operation is restarted at a count value of 0 (the WDTCT is not cleared when it is loaded with 55H by any other instruction).

Note: The internal low-speed RC oscillator circuit is started by setting WDTCKSL (WDTCNT, bit 6) to 0 and WDTRUN (WDTCNT, bit 5) to 1. Once the oscillator starts oscillation, operating current of several  $\mu$ A flows. (For details, refer to the latest "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet.")

It is noted that the oscillation is also started by setting SRCSTART (OCR3, bit 0) to 1.

# 4.5.3.2 WDT counter (WDTCT) (17-bit counter)

1) Operation start/stop: Places the CPU into the standby mode when WDTRUN is set to 1 and

WDTRUN is set to 0, or when WDTRUN is set to 1 and IDLOP1 and IDLOP0

(WDTCNT, bits 4 and 3) are set to 2.

2) Count clock: WDT clock (selected from the internal low-speed RC oscillation clock or

subclock).

3) Overflow: Generated when the WDTCT count value matches the count value designated

by WDTSL2 through WDTSL0 (WDTCNT, bits 2 to 0).

\* Generates the WDT reset signal, the WDTRUN clear signal, and WDTRSTF

(WDTCNT, bit 7) set signal.

4) Resetting: Setting WDTRUN to 0 or WDTRUN to 1 and executing "MOV #55H,

WDTCNT" instruction.

<sup>\*</sup> See Figure 4.6.2 for details on the WDT operation.

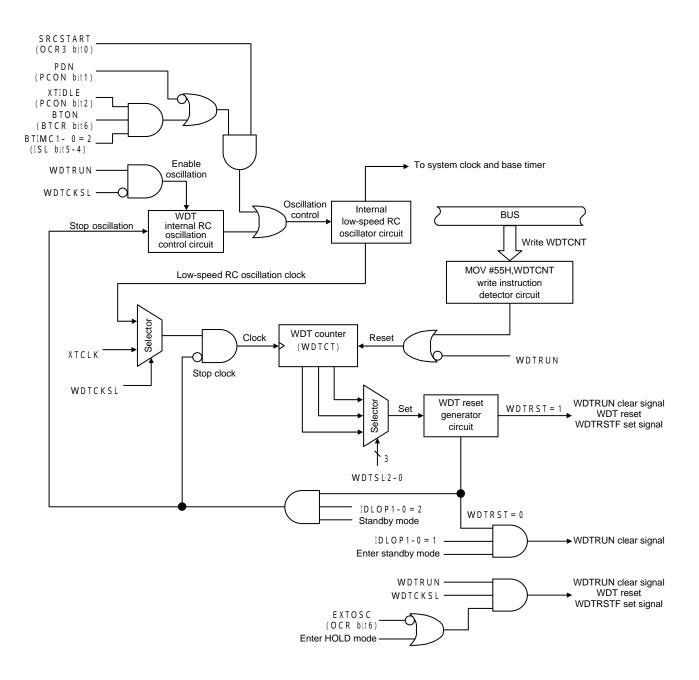


Figure 4.5.1 Watchdog Timer Block Diagram

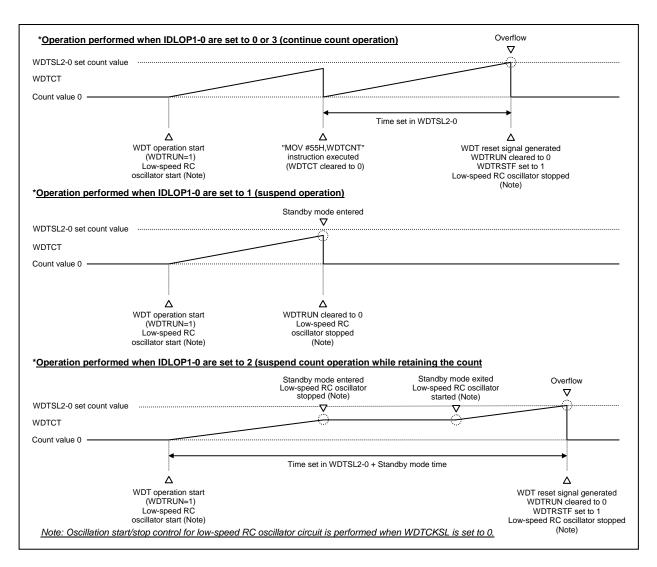


Figure 4.5.2 Sample Watchdog Timer Operation Waveforms

# 4.5.4 Related Registers

# 4.5.4.1 WDT control register (WDTCNT)

1) The WDT control register is used to manipulate the reset detection flag, to select the standby mode operation, to select the overflow time, and to control the operation of the WDT.

Address	Initial value	R/W	Name	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE79	0000 0000	R/W	WDTCNT	WDTRSTF	WDTCKSL	WDTRUN	IDLOP1	IDLOP0	WDTSL2	WDTSL1	WDTSL0

## WDTRSTF (bit 7): WDT reset detection flag

This bit is cleared when a reset is effected by applying a low level to the external  $\overline{RES}$  pin or using the internal reset (POR/LVD) function.

This bit is set when a WDT-triggered reset occurs.

This flag can be rewritten with an instruction.

# WDTCKSL (bit 6): WDTCT input clock select

WDTCKSL	WDTCT input clock
0	Internal low-speed RC oscillation clock
1	Subclock

# WDTRUN (bit 5): WDT operation control

Setting this bit to 0 stops the WDT operation. Setting this bit to 1 starts the WDT operation.

IDLOP1 (bit 4):

WDT standby mode operation selection

IDLOP0 (bit 3):

IDLOP1	IDLOP0	WDT Standby Mode Operation
0	0	Continue count operation
0	1	Suspend operation
1	0	Suspend count operation while retaining the count value
1	1	Continue count operation

<sup>\*</sup> See Figure 4.6.2 for details of the WDT operating modes.

WDTSL2 (bit 2):

WDTSL1 (bit 1):

Overflow time select

WDTSL0 (bit 0):

WDTSL2	WDTSL1	WDTSL0	WDTCT set count number and overflow generation time example							
WDTSLZ	WDIGET	WD13E0	Count number	Low-speed RC clock	Subclock					
0	0	0	1024	34.13ms	31.25ms					
0	0	1	2048	68.26ms	62.50ms					
0	1	0	4096	136.5ms	125.0ms					
0	1	1	8192	273.0ms	250.0ms					
1	0	0	16384	546.1ms	500.0ms					
1	0	1	32768	1.092ms	1.000s					
1	1	0	65536	2.184ms	2.000s					
1	1	1	131072	4.368s	4.000s					

<sup>\*</sup> Time values in the Low-speed RC clock column of the table refer to the time for a WDTCT overflow to occur when the low-speed RC oscillation frequency is 30 kHz (typical). The low-speed RC oscillation frequency varies from IC to IC. For details, refer to the latest "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet."

Note: The WDTCNT is initialized with "00H" when a low-level signal is applied to the external RES pin or a reset is triggered by the internal reset (POR/LVD) function. Bit 6 and bits 4 to 0 of the WDTCNT are not initialized, however, when a WDT-triggered reset occurs.

Note: The WDTCNT is disabled for write once the WDT starts operation (WDTRUN set to 1). If the instruction "MOV #55H, WDTCNT" is executed in this case, the WDTCT is cleared and count operation is restarted at a count value of 0 (the WDTCT is not cleared when it is loaded with 55H with any other instruction).

Note: The internal low-speed RC oscillator circuit is started by setting WDTCKSL to 0 and WDTRUN to 1. Once the oscillator starts oscillation, operating current of several  $\mu A$  flows. (For details, refer to the latest "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet.") It is noted that the oscillation is also started by setting SRCSTART (OCR3, bit 0) to 1.

<sup>\*</sup> Time values in the Subclock column of the table refer to the time a WDTCT overflow to occur when the 32.768 kHz X'tal oscillator is used.

# 4.5.5 Using the Watchdog Timer

Code a program so that instructions for clearing the watchdog timer periodically are executed.

- 1) Starting the watchdog timer
  - (1) Set the time for a WDT reset to occur to WDTCKSL (WDTCNT, bit 6) and WDTSL 2 to 0 (WDTCNT, bits 2 to 0).
  - (2) Set the WDT standby mode operation (HALT/HOLD/X'tal HOLD) to IDLOP 1 to 0 (WDTCNT, bits 4 to 3).
  - (3) After (1) and (2), set WDTRUN (WDTCNT, bit 5) to 1.

The watchdog timer starts functioning when WDTRUN is set to 1. Once the watchdog timer starts operation, WDTCNT is disabled for write; it is allowed only to clear WDTCT and read WDTCNT. Consequently, the watchdog timer can never be stopped with an instruction. The function of the watchdog timer is stopped only when a low level is applied to the external reset pin, a reset by the internal reset function (POD/LVD) occurs, or the standby mode is entered when IDLOP 1 to 0 are set to 1. In this case, WDTRUN is cleared.

### 2) Clearing the watchdog timer

When the watchdog timer starts operation, WDTCT counts up. When this WDTCT overflows, a WDT reset occurs. To run the program in the normal mode, it is necessary to periodically clear WDTCT before WDTCT overflows. Execute the following instruction to clear WDTCT while it is running:

## MOV #55H, WDTCNT

## 3) Detecting a runaway condition

Unless the above-mentioned instruction is executed, WDTCT overflows because the watchdog timer is not cleared. If an overflow occurs, the watchdog timer considers that a program hangup has occurred and triggers a WDT reset. In this case, WDTRSTF (WDTCNT, bit 7) is set. After a WDT reset occurs, the program execution restarts at address 0000H. (In the case of flash ROM version, the program execution restarts at address selected as an option.)

# 4.5.6 Notes on the Use of the Watchdog Timer

- 1) When the internal low-speed RC oscillation clock is selected as the WDT clock (WDTCKSL = 0)
  - If the internal low-speed RC oscillation clock is not to be used as the system clock, set SRCSTART (OCR3, bit 0) to 0 (the start/stop of the internal low-speed RC oscillator circuit is also controlled from the watchdog timer side). If SRCSTART (OCR3, bit 0) is set to 1, the internal low-speed RC oscillator circuit continues oscillation in the HALT mode even though the watchdog timer is running with IDLOP 1 and 0 set to 1 or 2.
  - To realize ultra-low-power operation using the HOLD mode, it is necessary to disable the watchdog timer from running in the HOLD mode by setting IDLOP 1 and 0 to 1 or 2. When setting IDLOP 1 and 0 to 1 or 3, several µA of operating current flows at all times because the low-speed RC oscillator circuit continues oscillating even in the HOLD mode.
  - If the standby mode is entered when the watchdog timer is running with IDLOP 1 and 0 set to 2, the internal low-speed RC oscillator circuit stops oscillation and the watchdog timer stops count operation and retains the count value. When the CPU subsequently exits the standby mode, the low-speed RC oscillator circuit resumes oscillation and the watchdog timer starts count operation. If the period between the release of the standby mode to the next entry into a standby mode is <a href="less">less</a> than "low-speed RC oscillation clock × 4," however, the low-speed RC oscillator circuit may not stop oscillation when the CPU enters the standby mode. In such a case (the standby mode is on), several µA of operating current flows because the low-speed RC oscillator circuit is active though the watchdog timer is inactive.

To minimize the standby power requirement of the set, code the program so that an interval of "<u>low-speed RC oscillator clock × 4</u>" or <u>longer</u> be provided between release from a standby mode and entry into the next standby mode (Note that the oscillation frequency of the low-speed RC oscillator may fluctuate. For details, refer to the latest "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet.").

- 2) When the subclock is selected as WDT clock (WDTCKSL = 1)
  - When the watchdog timer is used with WDTCKSL set to 1, set EXTOSC (OCR, bit 6) to 1 and start the watchdog timer operation with a program control allowing the subclock oscillator to get stabilized.
  - On the detection of subclock oscillation suspended by EXTOSC (OCR, bit 6) being set to 0 or the HOLD mode being entered when the watchdog timer is running, the watchdog timer considers that a program hangup has occurred and triggers a WDT reset. In this case, WDTRSTF is set.
  - \* This mode is primarily used for real time clock applications to realize low-power operation.

# <u>WDT</u>

# 4.6 Internal Reset Function

## 4.6.1 Overview

This series of microcontroller incorporates internal reset functions called the power-on reset (POR) and low voltage detection reset (LVD). The use of these functions will contribute to the reduction in the number of externally required reset circuit components (reset IC, etc.).

## 4.6.2 Functions

1) Power-on reset (POR) function

POR is a hardware feature that generates a reset to the microcontroller at power-on time. This function allows the user to select the POR release level by option only when the disuse of the low voltage detection reset function is selected. It is necessary to use the undermentioned low voltage detection reset function together with this function, or configure an external reset circuit if there are possibilities that chatter can occur or a momentary power loss occur at power-on time.

2) Low voltage detection reset (LVD) function

This function, when used together with the POR function, can generate a reset when power is turned on and when the power level lowers. As a user option the use or disuse and the detection level of this function can be specified.

# 4.6.3 Circuit Configuration

The internal reset circuit consists of POR, LVD, pulse stretcher circuit, capacitor  $C_{RES}$  discharging transistor, external capacitor  $C_{RES}$  + pull-up resistor  $R_{RES}$  or pull-up resistor  $R_{RES}$  alone. The circuit diagram of the internal reset circuit is given in Figure 4.6.1.

Pulse stretcher circuit

The pulse stretcher circuit stretches the POR and LVD reset signals. It is used to stretch the internal reset period and discharge the external capacitor  $C_{RES}$  connected to the RESET pin. The stretching time is from 30  $\mu$ s to 100  $\mu$ s.

• Capacitor C<sub>RES</sub> discharging transistor

This is an N-channel transistor used to discharge the external capacitor  $C_{RES}$  connected to the RESET pin. If the capacitor  $C_{RES}$  is not to be connected to the RESET pin, it is possible to monitor the internal reset signal by connecting only the external pull-up resistor  $R_{RES}$ .

• Option selector circuit

The option selector circuit is used to configure the LVD options. This circuit selects the enable or disable of LVD and its detection level. See Subsection 4.6.4.

• External capacitor C<sub>RES</sub> + Pull-up resistor R<sub>RES</sub>

After the reset signal from the internal reset circuit is released, the reset period is further stretched according to the external CR time constant. This enables the microcontroller to avoid the repetitive entries and releases of the reset state from occurring when the power-on chatter occurs. The circuit configuration shown in Figure 4.6.1 in which the capacitor  $C_{RES}$  and pull-up resistor  $R_{RES}$  are externally connected, is recommended when both POR and LVD functions are to be used. The recommended constant values are:  $C_{RES} = 0.022~\mu F$  and  $C_{RES} = 510~k$ . When the disuse of the internal pull-up resistor function is selected by option, the external pull-up resistor  $C_{RES}$  must always be installed even when the set's specifications inhibit the installation of the external capacitor  $C_{RES}$ .

### Internal reset

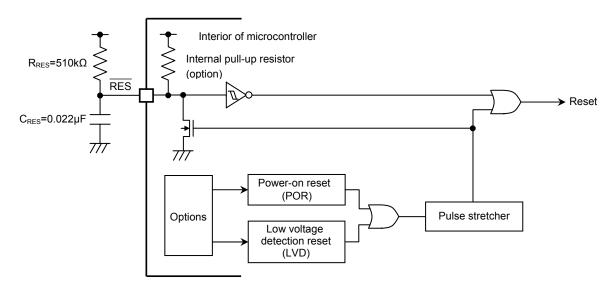


Figure 4.6.1 Internal Reset Circuit Configuration

# 4.6.4 Options

The POR and LVD options are available for the reset circuit.

1) LVD Reset Function Options											
"Enable	e": Use	"Disable": Disuse									
2) LVD Reset	Level Option	3) POR Releas	se Level Option								
Typical Value of Selected Option	Min. Operating VDD Value (*)	Typical Value of Selected Option	Min. Operating VDD Value (*)								
-	-	"1.67V"	1.8V to								
"1.91V"	2.1V to	"1.97V"	-								
"2.01V"	2.2V to	"2.07V"	-								
"2.31V"	2.5V to	"2.37V"	-								
"2.51V"	2.7V to	"2.57V"	-								
"2.81V"	3.0V to	"2.87V"	-								
"3.79V"	4.0V to	"3.86V"	-								
"4.28V"	4.5V to	"4.35V"	-								

<sup>\*</sup> The minimum operating VDD value specifies the approximate lower limit value of the VDD value beyond which the selected POR release level or LVD reset level can be effected without generating a reset.

### 1) LVD reset function option

When "Enable" is selected, a reset is generated at the voltage that is selected by the LVD reset level option.

Note 1: In this configuration, operating current of several  $\mu$ A always flows in all modes.

No LVD reset is generated when "Disable" is selected.

Note 2: In this configuration, no operating current will flow in all modes.

\* See the sample operating waveforms of the reset circuit shown in Subsection 4.6.5 for details.

### 2) LVD reset level option

The LVD reset level can be selected from 7 level values only when the LVD reset function is enabled. Select the optimal detection level based on the actual operating conditions.

### 3) POR release level option

The POR release level can be selected only when the LVD reset function is disabled. When not using the internal reset circuit, set the POR release level to the lowest level (1.67V) that will not affect the minimum guaranteed operating voltage.

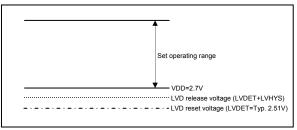
Note 3: No operating current flows when the POR reset state is released.

Note 4: See the notes in paragraph 2) of Subsection 4.6.6 when selecting a POR release level that is lower than the minimum guaranteed operating voltage (1.67V).

# • Selection example 1

Selecting the optimum LVD reset level to keep the microcontroller running without resetting it until VDD falls below 2.7V according to the set's requirements

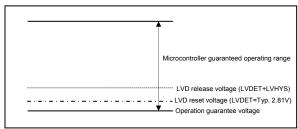
Set the LVD reset function option to "Enable" and select "2.51V" as the LVD reset level.



# • Selection example 2

Selecting the optimum LVD reset level that meets the guaranteed operating conditions of  $VDD=2.7V/tCYC=250\,ns$ 

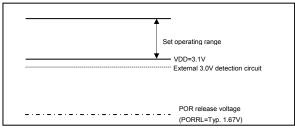
Set the LVD reset function option to "Enable" and select "2.81V" as the LVD reset level option.



# • Selection example 3

Disabling the internal reset circuit and using an external reset IC that can detect and react at 3.0V (see also paragraph 1) of Subsection 4.6.7)

Set the LVD reset function option to "Disable" and select "1.67V" as the POR release level option.

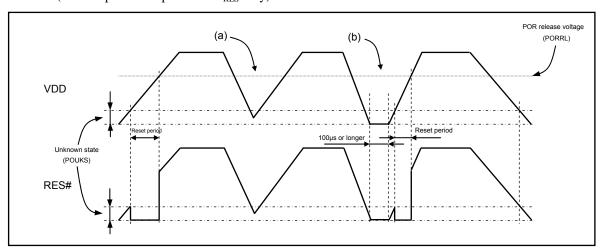


Note 5: The operation guarantee values (voltage/operating frequency) shown in the examples vary with the microcontroller type. Be sure to see the latest "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet for details."

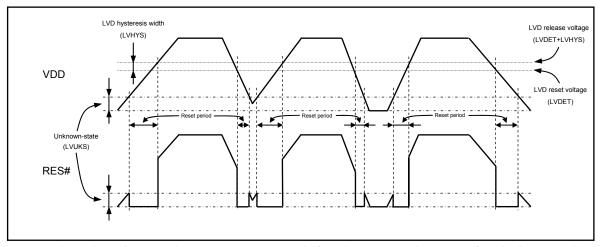
### Internal reset

# 4.6.5 Sample Operating Waveforms of the Internal Reset Circuit

 Waveform observed when only POR is used (LVD not used) (RESET pin: Pull-up resistor R<sub>RES</sub> only)



- There exists an unknown-state (POUKS), before the POR transistor starts functioning normally.
- The POR function generates a reset only when power is turned on starting at the VSS level. The reset release voltage in this case may have some range. Refer to the latest "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet" for details.
- No stable reset will be generated if power is turned on again when the power level does not go down to the VSS level as shown in (a). If such a case is anticipated, use the LVD function together with the POR function as explained in 2) or implement an external reset circuit.
- A reset is generated only when the power level goes down to the VSS level as shown in (b) and power is turned on again after this condition continues for 100 µs or longer.
- Waveform observed when both POR and LVD functions are used (RESET pin: Pull-up resistor  $R_{RES}$  only)



- There also exists an unknown-state (LVUKS), before the POR transistor starts functioning normally when both POR and LVD functions are used.
- Resets are generated both when power is turned on and when the power level lowers. The reset release voltage and entry voltage in this case may have some range. Refer to the latest "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet" for details.
- A hysteresis width (LVHYS) is provided to prevent the repetitions of reset release and entry cycles near the detection level.

# 4.6.6 Notes on the Use of the Internal Reset Circuit

1) When generating resets only with the POR function

When generating resets using only the POR function, do not short the RESET pin directly to VDD as when using it with the LVD function. Be sure to use an external capacitor  $C_{\text{RES}}$  of an appropriate capacitance. When the disuse of the internal pull-up resistor function is selected by option, be sure to use a pull-up resistor  $R_{\text{RES}}$ . Test the circuit intensively under the anticipated power supply conditions to verify that resets are reliably generated.

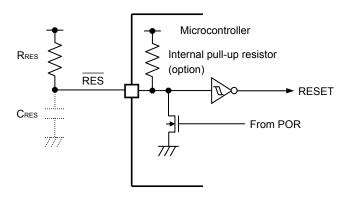


Figure 4.6.2 Reset Circuit Configuration Using Only the Internal POR Function

When selecting a release voltage level of 1.67V only with the internal POR function

When selecting an internal POR release level of 1.67V, connect the external capacitor C<sub>RES</sub>;

furthermore when the disuse of the internal pull-up resistor function is selected by option, connect the pull-up resistor R<sub>RES</sub> of the values that match the power supply's rise time to the RESET pin and make necessary adjustments so that the reset state is released after the release voltage exceeds the minimum guaranteed operating voltage. Or, set and hold the voltage level of the RESET pin at the low level until the release voltage exceeds the minimum guaranteed operating voltage.

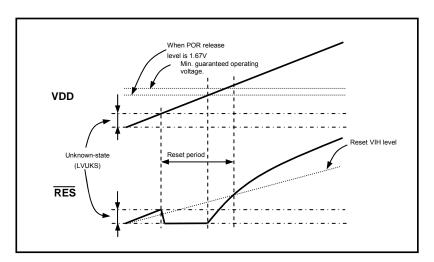


Figure 4.6.3 Sample Release Level Waveform in Internal POR Only Configuration

# Internal reset

3) When temporary power interruption or voltage fluctuations shorter than several hundreds  $\mu s$  are anticipated

The response time measured from the time the LVD senses a power voltage drop at the option-selected level till it generates a reset signal is defined as the minimum low-voltage detection width TLVDW shown in Figure 4.6.4 (see "SANYO Semiconductor Data Sheet"). If temporary power interruption or power voltage fluctuations shorter than this minimum low-voltage detection width are anticipated, be sure to take preventive measures shown in Figure 4.6.5 or other necessary measures.

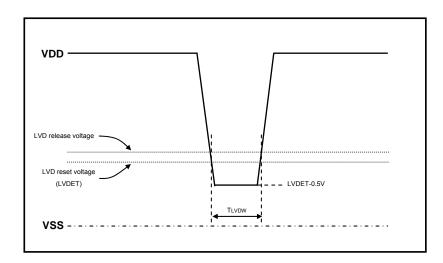


Figure 4.6.4 Example of Power Interruption or Voltage Fluctuation Waveform

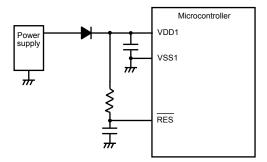


Figure 4.6.5 Example of Power Interruption/Voltage Fluctuation Countermeasures

# 4.6.7 Notes to be Taken When Not Using the Internal Reset Circuit

1) When configuring an external reset IC without using the internal reset circuit

The POR function is activated and the capacitor  $C_{RES}$  discharging N-channel transistor connected to the RESET pin turns on when power is turned on even if the internal reset circuit is not used. For this reason, when connecting an external reset IC, adopt the reset IC of a type whose detection level is not lower than the minimum guaranteed operating voltage level and select the lowest POR release level (1.67V) that does not affect the minimum guaranteed operating voltage. The figures given below show sample reset circuit configurations that use reset ICs of N-channel open drain and CMOS types, respectively.

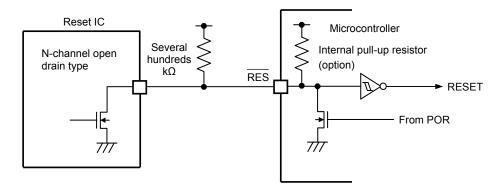


Figure 4.6.6 Sample Reset Circuit Configuration Using an N-channel Open Drain Type Reset IC

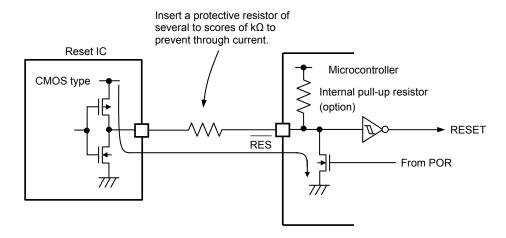


Figure 4.6.7 Sample Reset Circuit Configuration Using a CMOS Type Reset IC

# Internal reset

When configuring the external POR circuit without using the internal reset circuit The internal POR is active at power-on time even if the internal reset circuit is not used as in the case 1) in Subsection 4.6.7. When configuring an external POR circuit with a  $C_{RES}$  value of  $0.1\mu F$  or larger to obtain a longer reset period than with the internal POR, however, be sure to connect an external diode  $D_{RES}$  as shown in Figure 4.6.8.

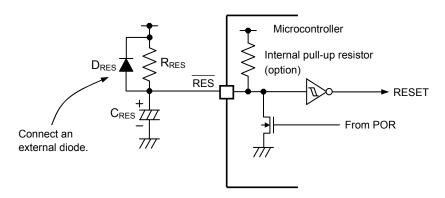


Figure 4.6.8 Sample External POR Circuit Configuration

# LC870A00 Chapter 4

# **Appendixes**

# **Table of Contents**

# **Appendix-I**

• Special Functions Register (SFR) Map

# **Appendix-II**

- Port 0 Block Diagram
- Port 1 Block Diagram
- Port 7 Block Diagram

Address	Initial Value	R/W	LC870G00	Remarks	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
0 ~ 00FF	XXXX XXXX	R/W	RAM256B	9 bits long									
FE00	0000 0000	R/W	AREG		-	AREG7	AREG6	AREG5	AREG4	AREG3	AREG2	AREG1	AREG0
FE01	0000 0000	R/W	BREG		-	BREG7	BREG6	BREG5	BREG4	BREG3	BREG2	BREG1	BREG0
FE02	0000 0000	R/W	CREG		-	CREG7	CREG6	CREG5	CREG4	CREG3	CREG2	CREG1	CREG0
FE03													
FE04													
FE05													
FE06	0000 0000	R/W	PSW		-	CY	AC	PSWB5	PSWB4	LDCBNK	OV	P1	PARITY
FE07	НННН НООО	R/W	PCON		-	-	-	-	-	-	XTIDLE	PDN	IDLE
FE08	0000 HH00	R/W	IE		-	IE7	XFLG	HFLG	LFLG	-	-	XCNT1	XCNT0
FE09	0000 0000	R/W	IP		-	IP4B	IP43	IP3B	IP33	IP2B	IP23	IP1B	IP13
FE0A	0000 0000	R/W	SPL		-	SP7	SP6	SP5	SP4	SP3	SP2	SP1	SP0
FE0B	0000 0000	R/W	SPH		-	SP15	SP14	SP13	SP12	SP11	SP10	SP9	SP
FE0C	НННН НООО	R/W	CLKDV		-	-	-	-	-	-	CLKDV2	CLKDV1	CLKDV0
FEOD													
FE0E	0000 XX00	R/W	OCR	XT1 and XT2 read at bits 2 and 3	-	CLKSGL	EXTOSC	CLKCB5	CLKCB4	XT21N	XT1 I N	RCSTOP	CFSTOP
FE10	0000 0000	R/W	TOCNT		•	TOHRUN	TOLRUN	TOLONG	TOLEXT	TOHCMP	TOHIE	TOLCMP	TOLIE
FE11	0000 0000	R/W	TOPRR	Prescaler is 8 bits long. (max.256Tcyc)	-	TOPRR7	TOPRR6	TOPRR5	TOPRR4	TOPRR3	T0PRR2	TOPRR1	TOPRR0
FE12	0000 0000	R	T0L		-	T0L7	T0L6	T0L5	T0L4	T0L3	T0L2	T0L1	T0L0
FE13	0000 0000	R	TOH		-	T0H7	T0H6	T0H5	T0H4	T0H3	T0H2	T0H1	T0H0
FE14	0000 0000	R/W	TOLR		-	T0LR7	T0LR6	T0LR5	T0LR4	T0LR3	T0LR2	T0LR1	T0LR0
FE15	0000 0000	R/W	TOHR		-	TOHR7	T0HR6	TOHR5	T0HR4	T0HR3	T0HR2	T0HR1	T0HR0
FE16	XXXX XXXX	R	TOCAL	Timer 0 capture register L	-	T0CAL7	T0CAL6	T0CAL5	T0CAL4	T0CAL3	T0CAL2	T0CAL1	TOCALO
FE17	XXXX XXXX	R	TOCAH	Timer O capture register H	-	T0CAH7	TOCAH6	T0CAH5	T0CAH4	T0CAH3	T0CAH2	T0CAH1	TOCAH0
FE18	0000 0000	R/W	T1CNT		-	T1HRUN	T1LRUN	T1L0NG	T1PWM	T1HCMP	T1HIE	T1LCMP	T1LIE
FE19	0000 0000	R/W	T1PRR		-	T1HPRE	T1HPRC2	T1HPRC1	T1HPRC0	T1HCMP	T1HIE	T1LCMP	T1LIE
FE1A	0000 0000	R	T1L		-	T1L7	T1L6	T1L5	T1L4	T1L3	T1L2	T1L1	T1L0
FE1B	0000 0000	R	T1H		-	T1H7	T1H6	T1H5	T1H4	T1H3	T1H2	T1H1	T1H0
FE1C	0000 0000	R/W	T1LR		-	T1LR7	T1LR6	T1LR5	T1LR4	T1LR3	T1LR2	T1LR1	T1LR0
FE1D	0000 0000	R/W	T1HR		-	T1HR7	T1HR6	T1HR5	T1HR4	T1HR3	T1HR2	T1HR1	T1HR0

Address	Initial Value	R/W	LC870G00	Remarks	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE1E													
FE1F													
FE20													
FE21													
FE22													
FE23													
FE24													
FE25													
FE26													
FE27													
FE28													
FE29													
FE2A													
FE2B													
FE2C													
FE2D													
FE2E													
FE2F													
FE30													
FE31													
FE32													
FE33													
FE34	0000 0000	R/W	SCON1		-	SI1M1	SI1MO	SI1RUN	SI1REC	SI1DIR	SI10VR	SI1END	SI1IE
FE35	00000 00000	R/W	SBUF1	9bit REG	SBUF18	SBUF17	SBUF16	SBUF15	SBUF14	SBUF13	SBUF12	SBUF11	SBUF10
FE36	0000 0000	R/W	SBR1		-	SBRG17	SBRG16	SBRG15	SBRG14	SBRG13	SBRG12	SBRG11	SBRG10
FE37													
FE38													
FE39													
FE3A													
FE3B													
FE3C													
FE3D	0000 0000	R/W	BTPRR		-	BTPRR7	BTPRR6	BTPRR5	BTPRR4	BTPRR3	BTPRR2	BTPRR1	BTPRR0

Address	Initial Value	R/W	LC870G00	Remarks	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE3E													
FE3F													
FE40	0000 0000	R/W	P0		-	FIX0	P06	P05	P04	P03	P02	P01	P00
FE41	0000 0000	R/W	PODDR		-	FIX0	P06DDR	P05DDR	P04DDR	P03DDR	P02DDR	P01DDR	POODDR
FE42	0000 0000	R/W	POFCR		-	T1HPWMEN	T1LPWMEN	POFLG	POIE	CLKOEN	CLK0DV2	CLKODV1	CLKODV0
FE43	HH00 0000	R/W	XT2PC	Oscillator pin/general-purpose port input control	-	-	-	XT1DR	XT1DT	XTCFSEL	XT2CMOS	FIX0	FIX0
FE44	0000 0001	R/W	P1		-	P17	P16	P15	P14	P13	P12	P11	P10
FE45	0100 0011	R/W	P1DDR		-	P17DDR	P16DDR	P15DDR	P14DDR	P13DDR	P12DDR	P11DDR	P10DDR
FE46	0100 0000	R/W	P1FCR		-	P17FCR	P16FCR	P15FCR	P14FCR	P13FCR	P12FCR	P11FCR	P10FCR
FE47	онон ннно	R/W	P1TST		-	FIX0	-	FIX0	-	-	-	-	FIX0
FE48	HH00 0000	R/W		( Access inhibited )	•	-	-	FIX0	FIX0	FIX0	FIX0	FIX0	FIX0
FE49	HH00 0000	R/W		( Access inhibited )	-	-	-	FIX0	FIX0	FIX0	FIX0	FIX0	FIX0
FE4A	0000 0000	R/W	I45CR		-	INT5HEG	INT5LEG	INT51F	INT51E	INT4HEG	INT4LEG	INT4IF	INT41E
FE4B	0000 0000	R/W	145SL		-	I5SL3	I5SL2	I5SL1	15SL0	I4SL3	I4SL2	I4SL1	I4SL0
FE4C					-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
FE4D						-	-	-		-	-		-
FE4E													
FE4F													
FE50													
FE51													
FE52													
FE53													
FE54													
FE55													
FE56													
FE57													
FE58	0000 0000	R/W	ADCRC	12-bit AD control	-	ADCHSEL3	ADCHSEL2	ADCHSEL1	ADCHSELO	ADCR3	ADSTART	ADENDF	ADIE
FE59	0000 0000	R/W	ADMRC	12-bit AD mode	-	ADMD4	ADMD3	ADMD2	ADMD1	ADMDO	ADMR2	ADTM1	ADTMO
FE5A	0000 0000	R/W	ADRLC	12-bit AD conversion result L	•	DATAL3	DATAL2	DATAL1	DATALO	ADRL3	ADRL2	ADRL1	ADTM2
FE5B	0000 0000	R/W	ADRHC	12-bit AD conversion result H	-	DATA7	DATA6	DATA5	DATA4	DATA3	DATA2	DATA1	DATA0
FE5C	НННО НННО	R/W	P7	1bit-IO (4:DDR 0:DATA)	-	-	-	-	P70DDR	-	-	-	P70DT
FE5D	0000 0000	R/W	IO1CR		-	INT1LH	INT1LV	INT1IF	INT1IE	INTOLH	INTOLV	INTOIF	INTOIE

Address	Initial Value	R/W	LC870G00	Remarks	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE5E	0000 0000	R/W	123CR		-	INT3HEG	INT3LEG	INT31F	INT31E	INT2HEG	INT2LEG	INT2IF	INT21E
FE5F	0000 0000	R/W	ISL		-	STOHCP	STOLCP	BT I MC1	BTIMCO	BUZON	NFSEL	NFON	STOIN
FE60													
FE61													
FE62													
FE63													
FE64													
FE65													
FE66													
FE67													
FE68													
FE69													
FE6A													
FE6B													
FE6C													
FE6D													
FE6E													
FE6F													
FE70													
FE71													
FE72													
FE73													
FE74													
FE75													
FE76													
FE77													
FE78													
FE79	0000 0000	R/W	WDTCNT	Timer type watchdog timer	-	RSTFLG	WDTCKSL	WDTRUN	IDLOP1	IDLOP0	WDTSL2	WDTSL1	WDTSLO
FE7A				-									
FE7B													
FE7C	0000 0000	R/W	OCR3		-	FRCSEL	FRCSTART	OCR3B5	OCR3B4	OCR3B3	OCR3B2	SRCSEL	SRCSTART

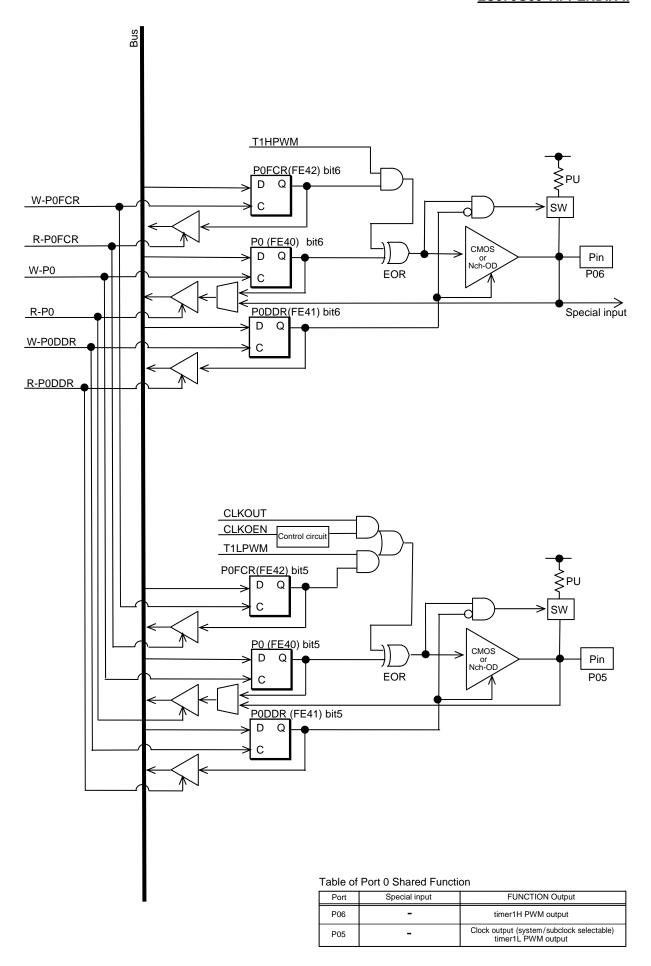
Address	Initial Value	R/W	LC870G00	Remarks	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE7D													
FE7E	0000 0000	R/W	FSR0	FLASH control (bit 4 is R/0)	-	FSR0B7	FSR0B6	FSAERR	FSWOK	INTHIGH	FSLDAT	FSPGL	FSWREQ
						Fix to 0	Fix to 0						
FE7F	0000 0000	R/W	BTCR	Base timer control	-	BTFST	BTON	BTC11	BTC10	BTIF1	BTTE1	BT1F0	BT1E0
FE80	0000 HHHH	R/W	VCPWMOL	Voltage control PWM	-	CPWM0L3	CPWM0L2	CPWM0L1	CPWMOLO	-	-	-	-
FE81	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWMOH	Voltage control PWM	-	CPWM0H7	CPWM0H6	CPWM0H5	CPWM0H4	CPWM0H3	CPWM0H2	CPWMOH1	CPWMOHO
FE82	0000 HHHH	R/W	VCPWM1L	Voltage control PWM	-	CPWML3	CPWML2	CPWML1	CPWMLO	-	-	-	-
FE83	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWM1H	Voltage control PWM	-	CPWM1H7	CPWM1H6	CPWM1H5	CPWM1H4	CPWM1H3	CPWM1H2	CPWM1H1	CPWM1H0
FE84	0000 0000	R/W	VCPWMOC	Voltage control PWM	-	CPWM0C7	CPWM0C6	CPWM0C5	CPWM0C4	ENCPWM1	ENCPWMO	CPWMOOV	CPWM01E
FE85	HHH0 0000	R/W	VCPWM01P	Voltage control PWM	-	-	-	-	CPWM01P2	CPWM1ECK	CPWMOECK	FIX0	FIX0
FE86													
FE87													
FE88													
FE89													
FE8A													
FE8B													
FE8C													
FE8D	0000 0000	R/W	HPWM2AC	High speed PWM	-	H2A40M0N	H2ACKDV	H2ACKSL	H2ABWSL	H2ARUN	H2ARLBSY	H2A0VF	H2AIE
FE8E	00HH HH00	R/W	HPWM2AL	High speed PWM	-	HPWM2AL1	HPWM2AL0	-	-	-	-	P17H2ASL	P16H2ASL
FE8F	0000 0000	R/W	HPWM2AH	High speed PWM	-	HPWM2AH7	HPWM2AH6	HPWM2AH5	HPWM2AH4	HPWM2AH3	HPWM2AH2	HPWM2AH1	HPWM2AH0
FE90													
FE91													
FE92													
FE93													
FE94													
FE95													
FE96													
FE97													
FE98													
FE99													
FE9A													
FE9B													

Address	Initial Value	R/W	LC870G00	Remarks	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FE9C													
FE9D													
FE9E													
FE9F													
FEA0													
FEA1													
FEA2													
FEA3													
FEA4													
FEA5													
FEA6													
FEA7	0000 0000	R/W	RCTRMTST	Frequency counter control	-	REFCKS1	REFCKS0	SELFRQ1	SELFRQ0	FRQTST1	FRQCTST	FRQCTEND	RCTRMTST0
FEA8													
FEA9													
FEAA													
FEAB													
FEAC													
FEAD													
FEAE													
FEAF													
FEB0													
FEB1													
FEB2													
FEB3	XXXX XXXX	R/W	(FRCTRMO)	High speed RC triming register 0	-	FRCADJ7	FRCADJ6	FRCADJ5	FRCADJ4	FRCADJ3	FRCADJ2	FRCADJ1	FRCADJ0
FEB4	XXXX XXXX	R/W	(FRCTRM1)	High speed RC triming register 1	-	FRCFRQ1	FRCFRQ0	FRCTEMP2	FRCTEMP1	FRCTEMP0	BIT2	FRCADJ9	FRCADJ8
FEB5	X XXXX XXXX	R/W	(SRCTRM)	Slow speed RC triming register	SRCSL30KZ	SRCRCB3	SRCRCB2	SRCRCB1	SRCRCB0	SRCFCB2	SRCFCB1	SRCFCB0	SRCDCB
FEB6													
FEB7													
FEB8													
FEB9													
FEBA													
FEBB													

Address	Initial Value	R/W	LC870G00	Remarks	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEBC													
FEBD													
FEBE													
FEBF													
FEC0	000H HH00	R/W	VRCNT	VREF control	-	VR120N	VR240N	CPON	-	-	-	VRADSEL	VR2SELZ
FEC1	XXXX XXXX	R/W	VR2AJ	VREF2V ajust	-	VR2AJ7	VR2AJ6	VR2AJ5	VR2AJ4	VR2AJ3	VR2AJ2	VR2AJ1	VR2AJ0
FEC2	0000 0000	R/W	ANTEZ	AD input port control	-	AN13IEZ	AN121EZ	AN11IEZ	AN101EZ	AN91EZ	AN7 I EZ	AN61EZ	AN51EZ
FEC3	00H0 H000	R/W	APCNT	10x/20x amplifier control	-	APON	GAIN20	-	APT0E	-	APDIR	APMD1	APMDO
FEC4	XXXX XXXX	R/W	PWRCTRMO	PWM RC triming register 0	-	VMRCAD7	VMRCAD6	VMRCAD5	VMRCAD4	VMRCAD3	VMRCAD2	VMRCAD1	VMRCAD0
FEC5	XHHH HHXX	R/W	PWRCTRM1	PWM RC triming 1	-	VMSL40M	-	-	-	-	-	VMRCAD9	VMRCAD8
FEC6	XXXX XXXX	R/W	VR4AJ	VREF4V ajust	-	VR4AJ7	VR4AJ6	VR4AJ5	VR4AJ4	VR4AJ3	VR4AJ2	VR4AJ1	VR4AJ0
FEC7													
FEC8													
FEC9													
FECA													
FECB													
FECC													
FECD													
FECE													
FECF													
FED0													
FED1													
FED2													
FED3													
FED4													
FED5													
FED6													
FED7													
FED8													
FED9													
FEDA	00HH HH00	R/W	TEMPS2CNT	Temperature sensor control	-	TEMPS20N	FIX0	-	-	-	-	D102X	FIX0
FEDB													

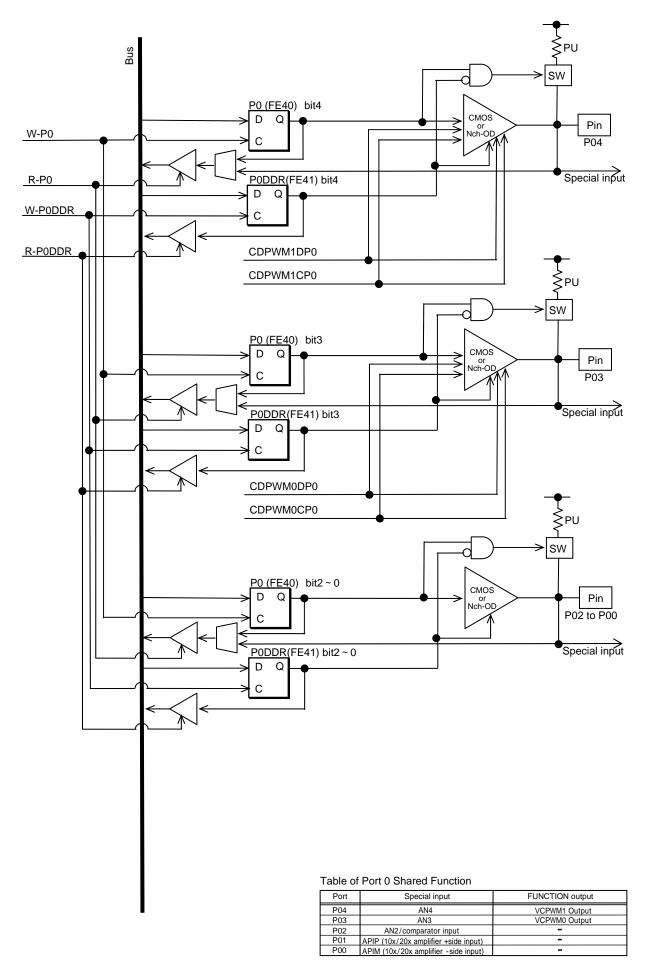
Address	Initial Value	R/W	LC870G00	Remarks	BIT8	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BIT0
FEDC													
FEDD													
FEDE													
FEDF													
FEE0	XXXX XXXX	R/W	D2TL	2-Diode 60C data L	-	D2TL7	D2TL6	D2TL5	D2TL4	D2TL3	D2TL2	D2TL1	D2TL0
FEE1	XXXX XXXX	R/W	D2TH	2-Diode 60C data H	-	D2TH7	D2TH6	D2TH5	D2TH4	D2TH3	D2TH2	D2TH1	D2TH0
FEE2	XXXX XXXX	R/W	D4TL	4-Diode 60C data L	-	D4TL7	D4TL6	D4TL5	D4TL4	D4TL3	D4TL2	D4TL1	D4TL0
FEE3	XXXX XXXX	R/W	D4TH	4-Diode 60C data H	-	D4TH7	D4TH6	D4TH5	D4TH4	D4TH3	D4TH2	D4TH1	D4TH0
FEE4													
FEE5													
FEE6													
FEE7													
FEE8													
FEE9													
FEEA													
FEEB													
FEEC													
FEED													
FEEE													
FEEF													
FEF0													
FEF1													
FEF2													
FEF3													
FEF4													
FEF5													
FEF6													
FEF7		_											
FEF8													
FEF9													
FEFA													
FEFB													

LC870G00 APPENDIX-



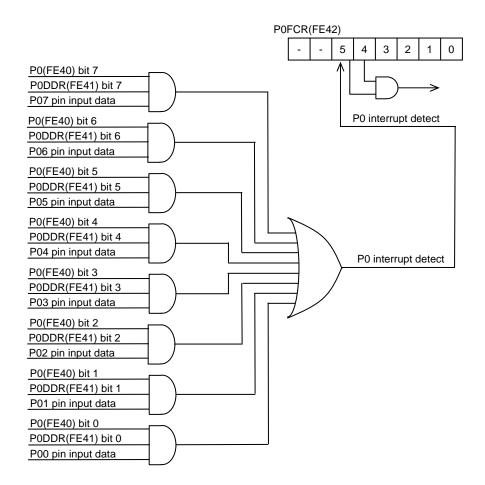
Port 0 Block Diagram (P06,P05)

Option: Output type (CMOS or N-channel OD) selectable on a bit basis.



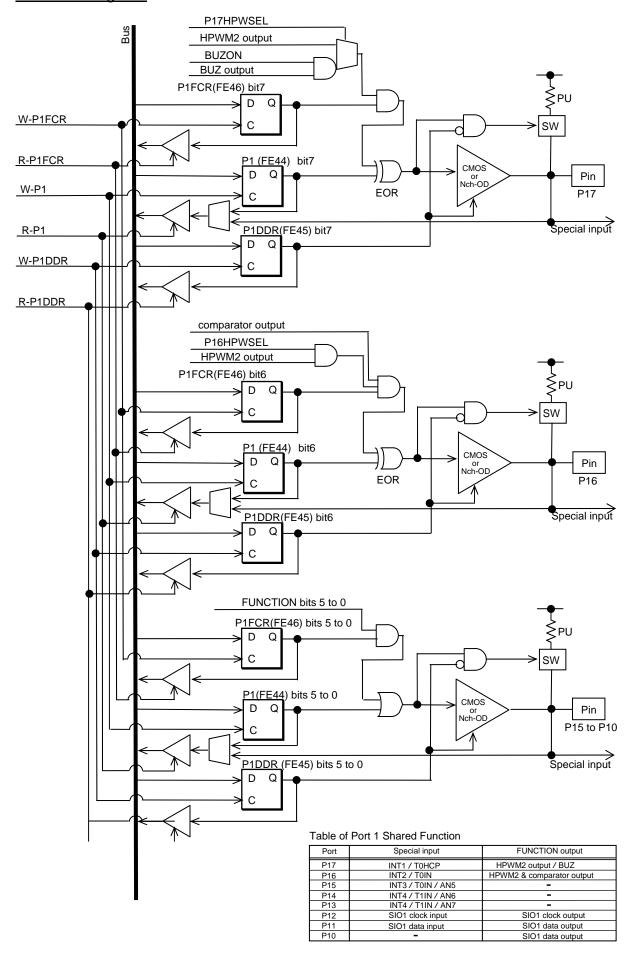
Port 0 Block Diagram (P04 to P00)

Option: Output type (CMOS or N-channel OD) selectable on a bit basis.



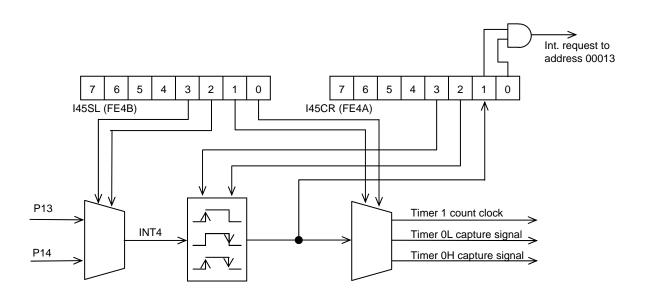
Port 0(Interrupt) Block Diagram

# **Port Block Diagrams**



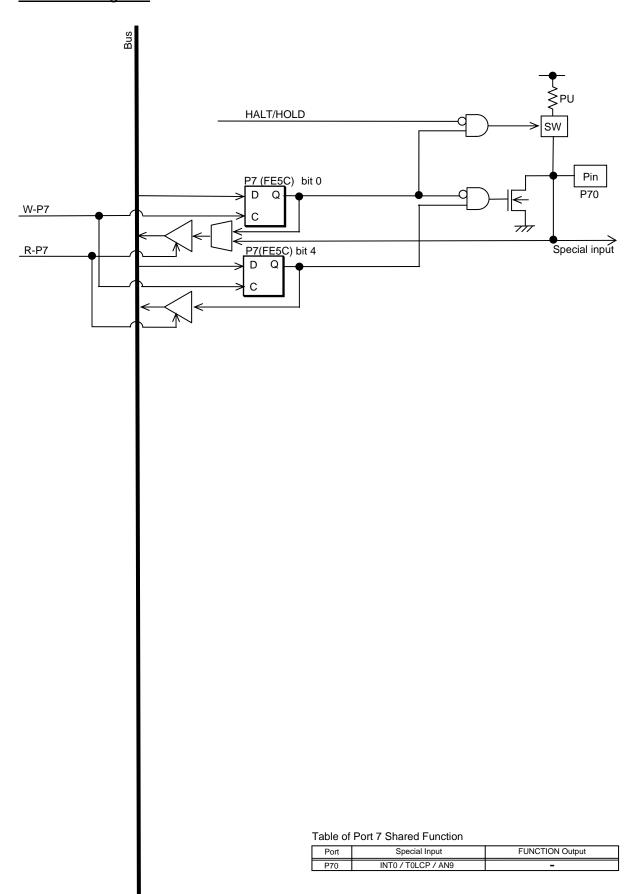
Port 1 Block Diagram

Option: Output type (CMOS or N-channel OD) selectable on a bit basis.

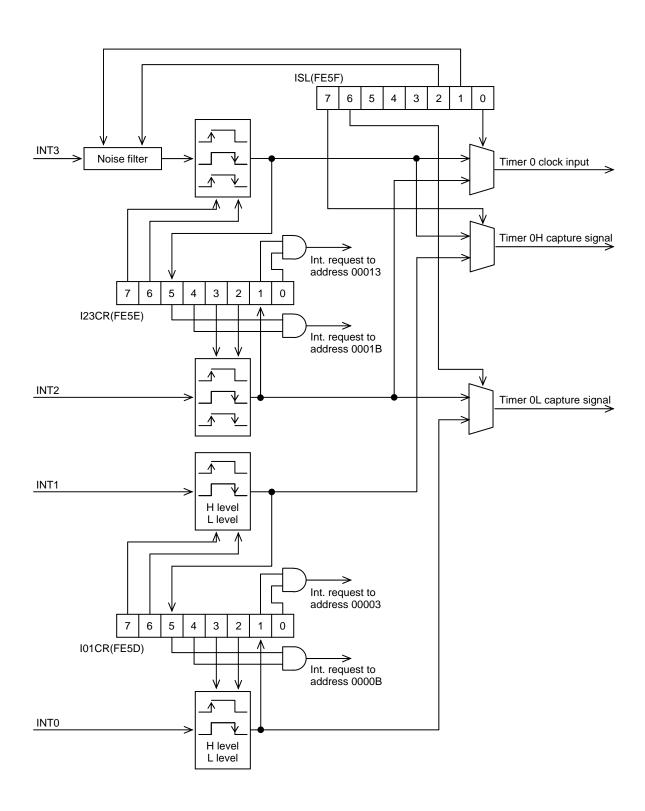


Ports 1 (Interrupt) Block Diagram

# **Port Block Diagrams**



Port 7 Block Diagram Option: None



Ports 1 and Port 7 (Interrupt) Block Diagram

# **Important Note**

This document is designed to provide the reader with accurate information in easily understandable form regarding the device features and the correct device implementation procedures.

The sample configurations included in the various descriptions are intended for reference only and should not be directly incorporated in user product configurations.

ON Semiconductor shall bear no responsibility for obligations concerning patent infringements, safety or other legal disputes arising from prototypes or actual products created using the information contained herein.

LC870G00 SERIES USER'S MANUAL

Rev: 1.00 June 14, 2013

ON Semiconductor
Digital Solution Division
Microcontroller & Flash Business Unit